

ENGLISH

5th Prim.
2026
SECOND TERM



By a group of specialists



Contents

Part (1)	Unit (1)	Hobbies Make Us Shine! _____	4
	Unit (2)	At the Doctor's _____	45
	Unit (3)	Suitcase Stories _____	85
	Review (1)	Test (7) Based on Units 1 -2-3 _____	126
	Unit (4)	Jobs in The Animal Kingdom _____	131
	Unit (5)	Our Solar System _____	175
	Review (2)	Test (13) Based on Units 4 -5 _____	218
	Unit (6)	Story: Offline but Happy _____	223
Part (2)	Listening Scripts	_____	255



Unit 1

Hobbies Make Us Shine!

الهوايات تجعلنا نتألق!

Learning Outcomes



Speaking

- Express their favorite hobbies using simple sentences
- Share past and present abilities using can / can't / could / couldn't
- Participate in pair and group discussions about hobbies and present ideas confidently
- Role-play hobby-related situations



Listening

- Recognize and understand vocabulary related to hobbies
- Identify main ideas and details from short dialogs and stories about hobbies
- Follow oral instructions for classroom activities such as surveys or activities



Reading

- Read short texts and stories about hobbies for main ideas and details
- Identify sequencing words in informational texts
- Recognize suffixes (-ment, -ship) in context and understand their meanings
- Answer comprehension questions related to texts



Writing

- Write sentences about their hobby using can / could
- Organize steps for starting a hobby using sequencing words
- Complete a short survey and write answers clearly
- Produce a short guided paragraph about hobbies with a title, correct spelling, and punctuation

Lesson 1

Show Your Talent

Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية



painting

التلوين / الرسم بالألوان



singing

الغناء



solving puzzles

حلّ الألغاز



skating

التزلج



playing the piano

العزف على البيانو



playing board games

لعب ألعاب الطاولة



story writing

كتابة القصة



cycling

ركوب الدراجة



crafting with paper

صنع أشياء بالورق



drawing

الرسم

Extra Vocabulary

الكلمات الإضافية

hobby

هواية

voice

صوت

choices

اختيارات

journals

دفاتر يوميات

talent show

عرض مواهب

music

موسيقى

coloring

تلوين

natural skill

مهاراة فطرية

class

حصّة / فصل

bicycle

دراجة

joy	فرح / سعادة	fishing	صيد السمك
paper	ورق / ورقة	cinema	سينما
game	لعبة	garden	حديقة خاصة
picture	صورة	park	حديقة عامة

Adjectives

صفات

favorite	مفضل	special	خاص - مميز
amazing	مذهل	creative	مُبدع
wonderful	رائع	important	مهم

Expressions and Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر

That sounds fun!	هذا يبدو ممتعًا!	Could that count as a hobby?	هل يمكن اعتبار ذلك هواية؟
join pieces together	يربط القطع معًا / يجمع القطع معًا	Let's skip the talent show.	لنتجاوز عرض المواهب.
sing a song	يغني أغنية	bring your hobby to life	اجعل هوايتك تنبض بالحياة / حقق هوايتك عمليًا
ride a bicycle	يركب الدراجة	at the end	في النهاية
on weekends	في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع	share with	يشارك مع
in the park	في الحديقة	Hobbies make us shine!	الهوايات تجعلنا نتألق!

Definitions تعريفات

talent	a natural skill
crafting	making something with your hands
cycling	riding a bicycle
singing	using your voice for music
solving puzzles	a game where you join pieces together

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
share	يشارك	shared	shared
perform	يؤدي / يقدم	performed	performed
enjoy	يستمتع	enjoyed	enjoyed
remember	يتذكر	remembered	remembered
join	ينضم / يربط	joined	joined
cycle	يركب الدراجة	cycled	cycled
skate	يتزلج	skated	skated
fish	يصطاد السمك	fished	fished
color	يلون	colored	colored
paint	يرسم بالألوان	painted	painted

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
show	يُظهر / يعرض	showed	shown
think	يفكر	thought	thought
sing	يغني	sang	sung
bring	يُحضر	brought	brought
forget	ينسى	forgot	forgotten
write	يكتب	wrote	written
shine	يتألق	shone	shone
draw	يرسم	drew	drawn



Listen and read:



Teacher: Next week we'll have a "Hobby Talent Show class" Who wants to share their hobby?

المُعَلِّم : الأسبوع القادم سيكون لدينا حصّة عرض مواهب الهوايات. من يريد أن يشارك بهوايته؟

Maya : Me! I'll show my **drawing** and **painting**. I can also do some **crafting** with paper.

مايا : أنا! سأعرض رسوماتي ولوحاتي. ويمكنني أيضًا عمل بعض الأعمال الورقية.

Adam : That sounds fun! I think I'll **perform** by **playing the piano** and singing a song.

آدم : هذا يبدو ممتعًا! أعتقد أنني سأقدّم عرّفاً على البيانو وأغني أغنية.

Maya : On weekends, I love **cycling** and **skating** in the park. Maybe I can bring a picture of that.

مايا : في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع، أحب ركوب الدراجة والتزلّج في الحديقة. ربما أحضر صورة لذلك.

Adam : I enjoy **solving puzzles** and **playing board games** with my family. Could that count as a hobby?

آدم : أنا أستمتع بحل الألغاز ولعب ألعاب الطاولة مع عائلتي. هل يمكن أن تُعتبر هواية؟

Nour : Story writing is my hobby. I sometimes write stories or journals.

نور : هوايتي هي كتابة القصص. أحيانًا أكتب قصصًا أو مذكرات.

Maya : Don't forget coloring—we love it! This talent show will be amazing!

مايا : ولا تنسوا التلوين—نحن نحبّه! سيكون عرض المواهب رائعًا!

Teacher: Wonderful choices, everyone! Remember, hobbies make us special. Next week, bring your hobby to life and share your joy with the class!

المُعَلِّم : اختيارات رائعة جميعًا! تذكّروا، الهوايات تجعلنا مميزين. الأسبوع القادم، احضروا هوايتكم وشاركوها مع الصف!



Choose the correct answer:

1. What hobby does Maya want to show?
 - a) drawing and painting
 - b) singing and dancing
 - c) playing board games
 - d) playing tennis
2. What does Adam want to do in the show?
 - a) cycling and skating
 - b) playing the piano and singing
 - c) fishing and writing stories
 - d) eating and sleeping
3. What hobby does Nour enjoy?
 - a) swimming and reading
 - b) writing and coloring
 - c) building puzzles and playing board games
 - d) writing stories and journal
4. Where does Maya like to cycle and skate?
 - a) in the park
 - b) in the garden
 - c) in her house
 - d) in the cinema
5. What does the teacher say at the end?
 - a) "Let's skip the talent show."
 - b) "Wonderful hobbies, everyone!"
 - c) "No one has good hobbies."
 - d) "No one has creative talents."

Exercises on Lesson 1

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Ahmed likes in his free time. He creates things with paper.
 - a) painting
 - b) crafting
 - c) singing
 - d) cycling
2. Mona enjoys because she likes music and using her voice.
 - a) singing
 - b) drawing
 - c) skating
 - d) solving puzzles
3. Khalid spent the afternoon on his bicycle in the park.
 - a) cycling
 - b) coloring
 - c) writing
 - d) playing the piano
4. We use colors and brushes when we are
 - a) cycling
 - b) skating
 - c) painting
 - d) crafting
5. Lina is very She has many wonderful ideas for her talents.
 - a) creative
 - b) lazy
 - c) sleepy
 - d) slow

6. Sami loves solving because he likes joining pieces together.
 a) games b) puzzles c) journals d) pictures
7. In the talent show, the children shared their with everyone.
 a) notebooks b) pictures c) hobbies d) journals
8. The school talent show was full of talents and happy students.
 a) old b) small c) quiet d) amazing
9. If you love painting, singing, or dancing, that could be your
 a) journal b) paper c) talent d) garden

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

creative - cycling - singing - puzzles - painting

Last Saturday, Omar spent time in the park. He enjoyed ① on his bike. His sister was ② a beautiful picture, while their friend was ③ a song. Later, they solved some ④ together. Omar felt happy because he shared his hobby with everyone. They promised to meet again the following weekend.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

Last Friday, Lina and her brother Sami joined the school talent show. Lina painted many colorful and beautiful pictures, while Sami sang a cheerful song for the class. Their friends also showed different hobbies, such as skating in the playground, playing board games, crafting with paper, and writing short stories. Everyone felt very happy and excited because all the talents were amazing. The classroom was full of joy, laughter, and clapping for every performance. It was a wonderful and memorable day for all.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The text is mainly about
 a) a day in the park b) a talent show at school
 c) cycling lessons d) solving puzzles

2. Sami during the talent show.

a) sang a song

b) painted pictures

c) cycled

d) drew flowers

B Answer the following questions:

3. What did Lina do at the talent show?

4. Which hobbies were performed by the friends?

5. How did the children feel during the talent show?

4 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

1. last - weekend - talent show - joined - the - We - school.

2. pictures - beautiful - Lina - painted - the - during - show.

3. in - performed - friends - their - hobbies - The - class.

4. the - Sami - a - sang - song - wonderful - during - show.

5 Punctuate the following:

1. did you enjoy the talent show

2. which hobby is your favorite, Menna

6 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

"My Favorite Hobby"

► painting - singing - park

.....

.....

.....

.....

Lesson 2

Why Hobbies Matter



Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية



activities

الأنشطة



hobbies

الهوايات



schoolwork

الواجبات المدرسية



teamwork

العمل الجماعي

Extra Vocabulary

الكلمات الإضافية

free time	وقت الفراغ	quickly	بسرعة
pieces	قطع	chores	الأعمال المنزلية
problem-solving	حل المشكلات	adults	البالغون / الكبار
main idea	الفكرة الرئيسية	example	مثال
patience	الصبر	clearly	بوضوح
reasons	أسباب	outside	في الخارج
well	جيدًا / بشكل جيد	lessons	دروس
success	النجاح	skills	مهارات

Adjectives

صفات

a few	قليل من / بعض	happier	أسعد
simple	بسيط	younger	أصغر سنًا
strong	قوي	far	بعيد
smarter	أذكى	nice	لطيف
energetic	نشط	healthy	بصحة جيدة

Expressions and Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر

Hobbies really count!

الهوايات مهمة حقًا!

learn skills for life

تعلم مهارات للحياة

bring us joy

تجلب لنا السعادة

earn money

يكسب المال

have fun

نستمتع / نمرح

over time

مع مرور الوقت

stay healthy

نبقى بصحة جيدة

easy to learn

سهل التعلم

for example

على سبيل المثال

spend time

يقضي وقتًا

go cycling / skating

الذهاب لركوب الدراجة / التزلج

good at

جيد في

in the past

في الماضي

How about you?

ماذا عنك؟

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present

Past

PP

relax	يسترخي	relaxed	relaxed
practice	يتدرب	practiced	practiced
finish	ينهي	finished	finished
earn	يكسب	earned	earned
require	يحتاج / يتطلب	required	required
suggest	يقترح	suggested	suggested
improve	يحسن	improved	improved
balance	يتوازن	balanced	balanced
kick	يركل	kicked	kicked
code	يبرمج	coded	coded

Present		Past	PP
grow	ينمو / يكبر	grew	grown
spend	يقضي	spent	spent
choose	يختار	chose	chosen
teach	يعلم	taught	taught



Read and learn



Hobbies Really Count! الهوايات مهمة حقًا!

Hobbies are the activities we love to do in our free time. They are not schoolwork, but things that bring us joy.

الهوايات هي الأنشطة التي نحب القيام بها في وقت فراغنا. ليست واجبات مدرسية، لكنها أشياء تجلب لنا السعادة.

Hobbies are important because they help us relax, have fun, and stay healthy. For example, when people play **board games** or **solve puzzles**, they learn teamwork and problem-solving. When they sing or play the piano, they practice patience and creativity. When they go **cycling** or **skating**, they stay strong and energetic.

الهوايات مهمة لأنها تساعدنا على الاسترخاء، والاستمتاع، والبقاء بصحة جيدة. على سبيل المثال، عندما يلعب الناس ألعاب الطاولة أو يحلون الألغاز، يتعلمون العمل الجماعي وحل المشكلات. وعندما يغنون أو يعزفون على البيانو، يتدربون على الصبر والإبداع. وعندما يذهبون لركوب الدراجة أو التزلج، يبقون أقوياء ونشيطين.

Hobbies also show how people grow. Many children can **draw**, **paint**, or **write** stories now, but when they were younger, they couldn't do these activities well. Some people can finish puzzles quickly today, but before they could only place a few pieces.



الهوايات تظهر أيضًا كيف ينمو الناس. يستطيع العديد من الأطفال الآن الرسم أو التلوين أو كتابة القصص، لكن عندما كانوا أصغر سنًا، لم يستطيعوا القيام بهذه الأنشطة بشكل جيد. بعض الناس يستطيعون اليوم إنهاء الألغاز بسرعة، لكن في الماضي كان بإمكانهم وضع عدد قليل فقط من القطع.

In the past, children could spend more time outside running, skating, or fishing. Today, we can choose from many hobbies that help us learn skills for life. The main idea is simple: hobbies are not only fun, they make us smarter, stronger, and happier.

في الماضي، كان الأطفال يقضون وقتًا أطول في الخارج بالجري أو التزلج أو الصيد. اليوم، يمكننا اختيار العديد من الهوايات التي تساعدنا على تعلم مهارات للحياة. الفكرة الرئيسية بسيطة: الهوايات ليست ممتعة فقط، بل تجعلنا أذكى، أقوى، وأسعد.

Choose the correct word from the box:



Student's
Book

cycling - reading - painting - puzzles - singing

1. I enjoy before I go to bed because books are relaxing.
2. My brother likes in the park, but he wears a helmet for safety.
3. When we play we must think carefully to find the right piece.
4. At the school concert, I practiced my favorite song.
5. She is very good at pictures of flowers and animals.

Language In Use



Expressing Ability التعبير عن القدرة

Present Ability - can:

- We use "can" to show what someone is able to do now.

نستخدم "can" للتعبير عن ما يستطيع الشخص القيام به الآن.

● **Affirmative :** Subject + can + base verb

الجملة المثبتة: الفاعل + **can** + الفعل الأساسي

● **Negative :** Subject + cannot (can't) + base verb

الجملة المنفية: الفاعل + **cannot (can't)** + الفعل الأساسي

Examples:

▶ She **can** play the piano.

▶ They **can't** skate.

Past Ability - could

● We use "**could**" to show what someone was able to do in the past.

نستخدم "**could**" للتعبير عن ما كان يستطيع الشخص القيام به في الماضي.

● **Affirmative :** Subject + could + base verb

الجملة المثبتة: الفاعل + **could** + الفعل الأساسي

● **Negative :** Subject + could not (couldn't) + base verb

الجملة المنفية: الفاعل + **could not (couldn't)** + الفعل الأساسي

Examples:

▶ I **could** read stories when I was six.

▶ She **couldn't** draw when she was younger.

Now you can express abilities

For "Past":

When I was younger, I **could** play football.

In the past, I **was able to** play football.

Before, I **enjoyed** playing football.

For "Now":

These days, I **can** play football.

I'm **able to** play football.

Right now, I **enjoy** playing football.

Extra Practice on Grammar

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. I swim very well when I was a child.
a) can b) could c) can't d) must
2. Salma speak three languages fluently now.
a) can b) could c) have d) couldn't
3. Omar come to the party yesterday because he was sick.
a) could b) can c) can't d) couldn't
4. He could the guitar, but he is learning now.
a) play b) plays c) playing d) played
5. We go to the cinema tonight because we have homework.
a) can b) could c) can't d) don't
6. When I was five, I ride a bike.
a) can b) am c) can't d) couldn't
7. She solve the problem, so she asked for help.
a) couldn't b) could c) can't d) will
8. My brother draw very well when he was young.
a) can b) could c) can't d) wouldn't

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. I (can) play the piano very well when I was young.
2. She (couldn't) speak French fluently now. She is still practicing.
3. When I was a child, I could (rode) a bicycle.
4. They can't (swam) in the pool because it is too cold.
5. Last year, Ahmed (can) read long stories easily.
6. We (cannot / go) to the park yesterday because it rained.
7. He can (solving) this puzzle by himself.
8. My sister (could / drew) beautiful pictures when she was young.

Exercises on Lesson 2

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Hobbies are important because they bring us
 a) joy b) chores c) schoolwork d) money
- In your time, you can go cycling.
 a) bad b) free c) count d) earn
- Doing hobbies over time helps us skills for life.
 a) bring b) learn c) finish d) suggest
- Some hobbies require, like solving puzzles.
 a) patience b) pieces c) example d) success
- Hobbies really because they help us be happier and healthier.
 a) count b) suggest c) finish d) hurt
- I could very well when I was a child.
 a) swim b) swims c) swimming d) swam
- She speak three languages fluently now.
 a) couldn't b) could c) can't d) can
- He finish his homework yesterday because he was tired.
 a) can b) could c) couldn't d) can't

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

free time - hobbies - teamwork - patience - activities

Many children spend their free time doing hobbies. Hobbies can include different ①, such as painting, playing games, or solving puzzles. Sometimes, hobbies need ②, especially when the activity is new. Working together with friends helps improve ③, and hobbies always bring us joy. Spending time on ④ is fun and helps us grow smarter and happier.

3

Read the text and answer the questions:

Last Monday, Omar learned why hobbies are important. He spent his free time practicing cycling and drawing. His friends also spent time together doing activities such as skating, solving puzzles, and working in teams. Hobbies helped them learn patience, problem-solving, and other useful skills for life. Everyone felt happier and more energetic because hobbies bring joy, improve health, and teach children to work together while enjoying their free time outside. Omar promised to try new hobbies every week. They all decided to share their favorite hobbies in the next class.

A

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The text is mainly about
 - a) schoolwork and chores
 - b) why hobbies matter
 - c) going shopping
 - d) painting alone
2. Omar spent his free time
 - a) practicing cycling and drawing
 - b) doing chores
 - c) watching TV
 - d) sleeping

B

Answer the following questions:

3. Which hobbies did Omar's friends do?

.....

4. How do hobbies help children?

.....

5. Summarize the text in two sentences.

.....

4

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. I (could) help my mother with the shopping every weekend.
2. She could (sang) very well when she was little.

3. Last summer, we (can) travel to the beach.

4. He can (reads) this book by himself now.

5 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

1. be - happier - help - Hobbies - and - children - smarter.

▶

2. free time - We - can - spend - doing - activities - our.

▶

3. teamwork - Children - learn - when - work - together - they.

▶

4. puzzles - skills - Solving - patience - teaches - and - problem-solving.

▶

6 Punctuate the following:

1. which hobby do you like most

▶

2. hobbies show how people grow smarter

▶

7 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

"Hobbies Really Count!"

▶ teamwork - free time - problem-solving

.....

.....

.....

.....

Lesson 3

The Hobby Club



Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية



decide

يقرر



arrangement

ترتيب / تنظيم



caring for

العناية بـ



agreement

اتفاق



leadership

القيادة



creativity

إبداع

Extra Vocabulary

الكلمات الإضافية

classmates

زملاء الصف

plants

نباتات

playground

ملعب

problem

مشكلة

group

مجموعة

everyone

الجميع

basketball

كرة السلة

discussion

مناقشة

club

نادي

solution

حل

skills

مهارات

tools

أدوات

students

طلاب

membership

عضوية

kitchen

مطبخ

friendship

الصداقة

art room

غرفة الرسم

finally

أخيرًا

library

مكتبة

quick

سريع

paintings

لوحات

excitement

حماس / إثارة

reading corner

ركن القراءة

enjoyment

متعة / استمتاع

beautiful

جميل

movement

حركة

step

خطوة

place

مكان

Expressions and Prepositions

تعابير وحروف جر

grow stronger

يصبح أقوى

at first

في البداية

side by side

جنبًا إلى جنب

at the same time

في نفس الوقت

on the playground

في الملعب

in the art room

في غرفة الرسم

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present

Past

PP

want

يريد

wanted

wanted

organize

ينظم

organized

organized

excite

يثير

excited

excited

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present

Past

PP

teach

يعلم

taught

taught

read

يقرأ

read

read

meet

يلتقي / يقابل

met

met

become

يصبح

became

become

Read the story

The School Hobby Club

نادي الهوايات المدرسي



At our School, a group of students **decided** to start a Hobby Club. The **arrangement** was simple: each student would share a special talent. In the art room, Sara showed her beautiful paintings. Her friendship with Maya grew stronger as they painted side by side. On the playground, Omar taught basketball skills, and his **excitement** made others want to join. In the library, Laila organized a reading corner. Her love for reading made her classmates want to read more. Finally, Kareem started a small garden, teaching the enjoyment of **caring for** plants.

في مدرستنا، قررت مجموعة من الطلاب إنشاء نادي الهوايات. كان الترتيب بسيطاً: كل طالب سيشارك موهبة خاصة. في غرفة الرسم، عرضت سارة لوحاتها الجميلة. ونمت صداقتها مع مايا وتقوّت بينما كانتا ترسمان جنباً إلى جنب. في الملعب، علّم عمر مهارات كرة السلة، وكان حماسه يجعل الآخرين يرغبون في الانضمام. في المكتبة، نظّمت ليلي ركن القراءة. حبها للقراءة جعل زملاء الصف يريدون القراءة أكثر. وأخيراً، بدأ كريم حديقة صغيرة، معلماً متعة العناية بالنباتات.

At first, the problem was that everyone wanted to meet at the same time. After a quick **discussion**, they had an **agreement**: each hobby would have its own day. The solution worked, and soon the Hobby Club became a place of **leadership, creativity, and fun**.

في البداية، كانت المشكلة أن الجميع أراد الاجتماع في نفس الوقت. بعد مناقشة سريعة، توصلوا إلى اتفاق: سيكون لكل هواية يومها الخاص. نجح الحل، وسرعان ما أصبح نادي الهوايات مكاناً للقيادة، والإبداع، والمتعة.

Read and write T (True) or F (False):



Student's
Book

1. Kareem started a small garden. (.....)
2. Laila's hobby was painting. (.....)
3. Omar taught basketball skills. (.....)
4. The students solved their problem with an agreement. (.....)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:



Student's
Book

1. Who taught basketball skills in the Hobby Club?
a) Sara b) Omar c) Maya d) Kareem
2. What problem did the students face?
a) They had no classroom.
b) They wanted to meet at the same time.
c) They lost their tools. d) They had no time.
3. Where did Sara and Maya paint together?
a) in the library b) in the art room
c) in the garden d) in the kitchen

Pronunciation



● A **suffix** is a group of letters added to **the end of a word** to change its meaning or make a new word.

اللاحقة هي مجموعة من الحروف تُضاف إلى نهاية الكلمة لتغيير معناها أو لتكوين كلمة جديدة.

Example:

▶ enjoy → enjoy**ment** (the suffix **-ment** changes the verb enjoy into a noun).
اللاحقة **-ment** تحوّل الفعل enjoy إلى اسم.

▶ friend → friend**ship** (the suffix **-ship** changes the noun friend into another noun).
اللاحقة **-ship** تحوّل الاسم friend إلى اسم آخر.

● Rule for Pronunciation of **-ment** and **-ship**

قاعدة نطق -ment و -ship.

● Suffix: **-ment**

Examples:

→ enjoyment, excitement, movement

● Stress stays on the main word, not on **-ment**.

يبقى التركيز الصوتي على الكلمة الأساسية، وليس على -ment.

▶ **EN**-joy-ment ✓

▶ not (en-**JOY**-ment ✗)

● Suffix: **-ship**

Examples:

→ friendship, leadership, membership

● Stress stays on the main word, not on **-ship**.

يبقى التركيز الصوتي على الكلمة الأساسية، وليس على **-ship**.

▶ **FRIEND**-ship ✓

▶ not (friend-**SHIP** ✗)

Choose the correct word to complete each sentence:



- The children jumped with when they saw the ice cream truck.
a) friendship b) enjoyment c) leadership d) excitement
- Good is important for a team to succeed.
a) enjoyment b) leadership c) friendship d) excitement
- I get a lot of from reading a good book.
a) friendship b) enjoyment c) leadership d) movement
- The of the new project was announced by the manager.
a) agreement b) development c) excitement d) movement



Add the suitable suffix to each word:

1. excite :
2. leader :
3. move :
4. friend :
5. enjoy :

Exercises on Lesson 3

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The students decided to a new hobby club at school.
a) lose b) join c) organize d) read
2. The club helps children learn leadership, creativity, and
a) friendship b) excitement c) agreement d) movement
3. In the art room, students created beautiful together.
a) plants b) paintings c) tools d) solutions
4. They worked side by side on the playground to stronger.
a) grow b) play c) read d) meet
5. They discussed a problem and found a together.
a) solution b) paint c) tools d) agreement
6. We see the stars last night as the sky was clear.
a) can b) couldn't c) can't d) could
7. Last week, my brother solve the puzzle easily.
a) can b) could c) can't d) couldn't
8. When I was younger, I could long stories easily.
a) read b) reads c) reading d) be read
9. He finish his homework on time and slept early last night.
a) can b) could c) can't d) has
10. I understand the lesson yesterday because it was difficult.
a) can b) could c) can't d) couldn't

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

teamwork - creativity - group - excitement - caring for

At school, students wanted a fun way to learn and work together. Last Monday, the students formed a hobby club. Everyone joined a ① to share ideas. They learned ② and worked together on art, sports, and reading activities. Students also practiced ③ plants and animals. There was a great ④ when everyone shared their skills and talents.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

Students at our school were excited to start something new and enjoyable. Last Tuesday, a new hobby club started at school. Students decided to join and organize fun activities. Some went to the art room to paint; others played basketball on the playground. Everyone worked side by side to care for plants and complete projects together. They learned leadership, creativity, and teamwork. The club made students excited and happy. By the end of the day, everyone enjoyed the activities and promised to meet again to continue their hobbies.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Last, a new hobby club started at school.
a) Monday b) Tuesday c) Wednesday d) Thursday
- Students worked side by side to
a) care for plants and complete projects
b) lose games c) read books d) become quiet

B Answer the following questions:

- Which activities did the students do in the club?
▶
- What skills did the club help students learn?
▶

5. Give a suitable title to the text.



4

Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

1. hobby club - join - **Students** - decided - to - the - new.



2. paintings - in - art room - the - created - beautiful - **They**.



3. together - plants - cared - for - **We** - and - animals.



4. with - share - your - classmates - **What** - would - you - hobby?



5

Punctuate the following:

1. did everyone enjoy the hobby club



2. he likes doing many different activities



6

Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

"My Favorite Hobby Club"



► **classmates - leadership - creativity**

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Lessons 4-5

Writing: Steps to Start a Hobby
Project: Think and Create a Survey

Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية



survey

استطلاع / استبيان



art

فن



instrument

آلة موسيقية



nature

طبيعة



guitar

جيتار



keyboard

لوحة مفاتيح (آلة موسيقية)



drums

طبول

Extra Vocabulary

الكلمات الإضافية

manager	مدير	experiences	تجارب / خبرات
truly	حقًا	carefully	بعناية
gardening	البستنة	crafts	أشغال يدوية
seeds	بذور	baking	الخَبز
soil	تربة	stamps	طوابع
interests	اهتمامات	cards	بطاقات
pot	أصيص	outdoors	في الهواء الطلق
immediately	فورًا	comics	قصص مصورة
progress	تقدم	opinions	آراء

Adjectives

صفات

exciting

مثير

perfect

مثالي

alone

وحيّدًا / منفردًا

single

واحد / وحيد

blank

فارغ

proud

فخور

Expressions and Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر

take a moment

يستغرق لحظة

even better

أفضل بكثير

take time

يستغرق وقتًا

learn more about

يتعلم المزيد عن

at home

في المنزل

in the future

في المستقبل

during holidays

خلال العطلات

at a club

في نادي

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present

Past

PP

help

يساعد

helped

helped

match

يطابق

matched

matched

achieve

يحقق

achieved

achieved

bake

يخبز

baked

baked

cook

يطبخ

cooked

cooked

collect

يجمع

collected

collected

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present

Past

PP

build

يبني

built

built

begin

يبدأ

began

begun

Read and learn



Writing steps to start a hobby كتابة خطوات لبدء هواية

Do you want to try something exciting and new? Starting a great hobby is easy! It brings you enjoyment and helps build strong friendship with others. Follow these four simple steps:

هل ترغب في تجربة شيء ممتع وجديد؟ إن بدء هواية رائعة أمر سهل! فهي تمنحك المتعة وتساعد على بناء صداقات قوية مع الآخرين. اتبع هذه الخطوات الأربع البسيطة:

First, take a moment to think about what you truly love. What makes you happy in your free time? Do you like music, art, nature, or movement? Choose a hobby that matches your interests, like drawing, reading, or cycling.

أولاً، خذ لحظة لتفكر فيما تحبه حقاً. ما الذي يجعلك سعيداً في وقت فراغك؟ هل تحب الموسيقى، أو الفن، أو الطبيعة، أو الحركة؟ اختر هواية تناسب اهتماماتك، مثل الرسم أو القراءة أو ركوب الدراجة.

Next, it's time to get the things you need to begin. If you decide on music, you might need an instrument like a small keyboard or guitar. If you choose gardening, you will need seeds, soil, and a small pot.

بعد ذلك، حان الوقت لتجهيز الأشياء التي تحتاجها للبدء. إذا اخترت الموسيقى، فقد تحتاج إلى آلة موسيقية مثل لوحة مفاتيح صغيرة أو جيتار. وإذا اخترت البستنة، فستحتاج إلى بذور وتربة وأصيص صغير.

Then, start practicing your new hobby! Don't try to be perfect immediately; learning takes time. Play simple songs at first, or plant a small seed in a single pot. **After that**, practice your hobby step by step to see your amazing progress.

ثم ابدأ في ممارسة هوايتك الجديدة! لا تحاول أن تكون مثاليًا فوراً؛ فالتعلم يحتاج إلى وقت. اعزف أغاني بسيطة في البداية، أو ازرع بذرة صغيرة في أصيص واحد. بعد ذلك، واصل ممارسة هوايتك خطوة خطوة لترى تقدّمك الرائع.

Finally, enjoy what you have achieved! Show your music to your family, or share a picture of your growing plant with a friend. Hobbies make life exciting and fun, and sharing your excitement makes it even better!

أخيراً، استمتع بما حققته! اعرض موسيقاك على عائلتك، أو شارك صورة نبتتك التي تنمو مع صديق. تجعل الهوايات الحياة ممتعة ومثيرة، ومشاركة حماسك تجعلها أفضل بكثير.

تذكر Remember

- **Sequencing words** help us show the **order of steps or events** in text. They tell the reader what happens first, what comes next and what happens at the end.

كلمات ترتيب الأحداث تساعدنا على عرض تسلسل الخطوات أو الأحداث في النص. إنها تخبر القارئ بما يحدث أولاً، وما يأتي بعده، وما يحدث في النهاية.

- 1 **First,** → use it for the beginning step.
أولاً، ← استخدمها للخطوة الأولى.
- 2 **Next,** → use it for the second step.
بعد ذلك، ← استخدمها للخطوة الثانية.
- 3 **Then,** → use it for the mid steps.
ثم، ← استخدمها للخطوات الوسطى.
- 4 **After that,** → use it for more mid steps.
بعد ذلك، ← استخدمها لمزيد من الخطوات الوسطى.
- 5 **Finally,** → use it for the last step.
أخيراً، ← استخدمها للخطوة الأخيرة.

Write (30-40) words about how you started your favorite hobby:



Student's
Book

1. Choose a title.
2. Choose a hobby you like (example: drawing, football, reading, cycling).
3. Think about the steps you take to start this hobby.
4. Use sequencing words to show the order (first, then etc..).



Project

A **survey** is a group of questions that people answer to share their ideas, opinions, or experiences.

"الاستبيان هو مجموعة من الأسئلة يجيب عليها الناس لمشاركة أفكارهم أو آرائهم أو تجاربهم."



Follow the instructions to do the survey

اتبع التعليمات لإجراء الاستبيان:

- Read each question carefully. اقرأ كل سؤال بعناية.
- Put a ✓ next to your choices in the checkboxes. ضع ✓ بجانب اختياراتك في المربعات.
- If the question asks you to circle a number, circle the one that shows how much you enjoy it. إذا طلب السؤال منك تحديد رقم، ضع دائرة حول الرقم الذي يوضح مدى استمتاعك به.
- If you see a blank line, write your own answer. إذا رأيت سطرًا فارغًا، اكتب إجابتك الخاصة.

Your Hobbies:

1. What are your favorite hobbies?

▶

2. How often do practice your hobbies?

▶

3. When do you perform your hobbies?

▶

4. What hobby would you like to try?

▶

Exercises on Lessons 4 & 5

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- A hobby is something you enjoy doing in your
a) keyboard b) free time c) soil d) stamps
- If you like music, you might need a/an to start your hobby.
a) instrument b) card c) book d) toy
- When you grow plants, you need seeds, soil, and a
a) guitar b) pot c) card d) cartoon
- Practicing a hobby regularly helps you see your
a) indoors b) cartoons c) progress d) outdoors
- A hobby can help you build strong with others.
a) instruments b) friendship c) gardening d) drawing
- Gardening is an example of a hobby that lets you enjoy
a) nature b) reading c) baking d) stamps
- You can your hobby with family or friends and enjoy your progress.
a) share b) bake c) play d) collect
- Cycling and skating help children stay and strong.
a) energetic b) alone c) lazy d) single

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

share - progress - hobby - practice - books

Learning a new hobby can be exciting and fun. First, choose a ① that matches your interests, like drawing or reading. Then, collect the things you need for your hobby, such as ②, paints, or seeds. After that, ③ your hobby step by step and try to improve. Finally, ④ your hobby with family or friends and enjoy your progress.

3

Read the text and answer the questions:

Amr read an amazing advertisement at school! The advertisement says, "Do you want to try a new and exciting hobby?" He shares the advertisement idea with his friends. First, Sara and Omar suggest thinking about what you love, like music, art, or nature. Next, get the things you need, such as books, paints, or instruments. Then, practice your hobby step by step, just like Adam does. Finally, share your hobby with friends and family, and be proud of your progress. Hobbies make life at Sunshine School exciting and fun!

A

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Amr read an amazing advertisement at
 a) school b) home c) the market d) the park
2. practices his hobby step by step.
 a) Sara b) Omar c) Amr d) Adam

B

Answer the following questions:

3. What does the advertisement say?
 ▶
4. What do Sara and Omar suggest doing first?
 ▶
5. Give a suitable title to the text.
 ▶

4

Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

1. art - you - Do - like - or - music?
 ▶ ?
2. choose - can - You - a hobby - matches - that - your interests.
 ▶
3. choose - If - gardening, - you - need - you will - seeds.
 ▶

4. immediately - perfect - be - to - try - **Don't**.

▶

5. before - you - a survey - **Did** - do - ever?

▶ ?

5 Punctuate the following:

1. where do you usually perform your hobbies

▶

2. practice your hobby step by step

▶

3. hobbies make life exciting and fun

▶

6 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

"Steps to Start a Hobby"

▶ **First - Then - Next**

▶

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Review on Unit 1

Main Vocabulary

playing board games	لعب ألعاب الطاولة	crafting with paper	صنع أشياء بالورق
solving puzzles	حل الألغاز	story writing	كتابة القصص
skating	التزلج	cycling	ركوب الدراجة
painting	التلوين / الرسم بالألوان	singing	الغناء
drawing	الرسم	playing the piano	العزف على البيانو
talent show	عرض مواهب	problem-solving	حل المشكلات
schoolwork	الواجبات المدرسية	teamwork	العمل الجماعي
activities	الأنشطة	hobbies	الهوايات
arrangement	ترتيب / تنظيم	leadership	القيادة
creativity	الإبداع	survey	استطلاع
art	فن	instrument	آلة موسيقية
guitar	جيتار	drums	طبول

Language Notes



Expressing Ability التعبير عن القدرة

Present Ability - can :

- We use **"can"** to show what someone is able to do now:

Examples:

▶ She **can play** the piano.

Past Ability - could

- We use **"could"** to show what someone was able to do in the past

Examples:

▶ I **could read** stories when I was six.

Pronunciation

- A **suffix** is a group of letters added to the end of a word to change its meaning or make a new word

▶ enjoy → enjoyment (**the suffix -ment changes the verb enjoy into a noun**).

- Stress stays on the main word, not on -ment.

▶ **EN**-joy-ment ✓

▶ friend → friendship (**the suffix -ship changes the noun friend into another noun**).

- Stress stays on the main word, not on -ship.

▶ **FRIEND**-ship ✓



Dictation:

chores	أصغر سناً
drawing	التلوين / الرسم بالألوان
joy	صنع أشياء بالورق
playground	التزلج
reading corner	الغناء
solving puzzles	مناقشة
cartoons	قصص مصورة
classmates	ركوب الدراجة
hobby	في الهواء الطلق
friendship	تجارب
natural skill	عرض مواهب
gardening	استطلاع
energetic	مُبدع
opinions	القيادة
journals	اهتمامات
caring for	صيد السمك
playing board games	حل المشكلات
enjoyment	وقت الفراغ
art room	أذكى
success	الصداقة

Writing Samples

"My Favorite Hobby"

My favorite hobby is painting. I also like singing. I enjoy using bright colors to draw beautiful pictures. On weekends, I go to the park and sing happily while painting nature scenes that make me feel relaxed and joyful. This hobby helps me feel calm.

"Hobbies Really Count!"

Hobbies are fun activities we enjoy in our free time. They help us learn teamwork and problem-solving skills. When we play games or work together, we think carefully, share ideas, and grow smarter, happier, and more confident every day. These hobbies make learning enjoyable always.

"My Favorite Hobby Club"

My favorite hobby club brings classmates together to share ideas and talents. It helps us build leadership skills and creativity through fun activities. We work as a team, support each other, and enjoy learning new hobbies in a friendly, happy school environment every single day.

"Steps to Start a Hobby"

First, think about what you truly love and what makes you happy in your free time. Next, get the things you need, like instruments, art materials, or gardening tools. Then, practice regularly. Finally, enjoy your progress and share it with friends.

"Hobbies Make Life Fun"

Hobbies help us relax after school. We play games, draw, or sing to enjoy ourselves. We learn new skills and meet new people. Hobbies also help us make friends easily.

"Different Hobbies Around Us"

People enjoy many hobbies around us. Some like building things, creating models, or crafting projects with care. Others love reading stories to explore new worlds and ideas. Many enjoy playing musical instruments and making music for fun. Hobbies help everyone relax, learn new skills, and feel happy.



1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

(6Ms)

1. Manar enjoys (**drawing** - **cycling** - **swimming**), painting, and writing stories.
2. Manar likes running, skating, and playing (**outside** - **inside** - **at school**).
3. Hobbies help her learn new skills, stay (**weak** - **sad** - **strong**), and feel happy every day.

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box: (4Ms)

excited - crafting - piano - painting

Soha : Hello, Teacher! I am excited to share my hobby in the Hobby Talent Show.

Teacher : That's wonderful, Soha! What will you do?

Soha : I will show my ① and also do some ② with paper.

Teacher : Great! What else will you do?

Soha : I will play the ③ and sing songs.

Teacher : Perfect! I'm ④ to see your work next week.

3 Choose the correct answer:

(4Ms)

1. (**Cycling** - **Singing** - **Crafting**) means using your voice for music.
2. (**Solving puzzles** - **Skating** - **Painting**) helps you improve your problem-solving skills.
3. I (**could** - **couldn't** - **can**) play the guitar now, but last year I couldn't.
4. (**Couldn't** - **Can't** - **Could**) you help me with the math homework? It's very difficult.

4 Read and correct the underlined mistakes:

(8Ms)

1. She sings very well today, but last year she can't sing clearly. (.....)
2. They can't skating now. (.....)

3. Good leader is important for a team to succeed. (.....)

4. We couldn't swims when we were six. (.....)

5 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

(10Ms)

Omar is watching a TV program about hobbies. He learns that hobbies are activities we enjoy in our free time. People can play board games, solve puzzles, sing, or play the piano. Hobbies help us relax, have fun, and stay healthy. They also teach patience, creativity, and teamwork. Omar knows that hobbies make us stronger, smarter, and happier every day.

A Read and write T(True) or F(False):

1. Omar learns that hobbies help people relax and stay healthy. (.....)

2. Omar thinks hobbies are only for schoolwork and not for fun. (.....)

B Choose the correct answer:

3. Omar is watching a TV program about (cooking - hobbies - animals).

4. Hobbies teach patience, creativity, and (teamwork - homework - games).

5. Omar knows that hobbies make us (shorter - taller - stronger), smarter, and happier.

6 Write a short paragraph of (4) sentences using the following guiding words:

(8Ms)

"Hobbies Make Life Fun"

▶ relax - play - learn - make friends

.....

.....

.....

Test 2 on Unit 1

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب.

Total

30



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

(2Ms)

1. Laila enjoys different hobbies in her free time. (.....)
2. She doesn't like solving puzzles and playing board games. (.....)
3. Cycling and skating help Laila stay healthy and strong. (.....)
4. Laila could draw very well when she was younger. (.....)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

(2Ms)

1. We use brushes and colors to
 a) sing b) paint c) cycle d) skate
2. The children jumped with when they saw the clown.
 a) friendship b) development c) excitement d) leadership
3. When my uncle was young, he buy a car as he didn't have enough money.
 a) can b) can't c) could d) couldn't
4. Adam can play the piano well now.
 a) play b) playing c) plays d) played

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (2Ms)

paintings - teamwork - talent - excitement - club

It was a great day at school. Fady joined the new hobby ①
 at school with his friends. Each student shared a special ②
 In the art room, students showed much ③ to each other's
 work, Some other students played team sports with great ④
 The club became full of fun and joy.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

(7Ms)

Do you want to try something fun at school? Joining a Hobby Club is a great idea! It brings enjoyment and helps build strong friendships. First, think about what talent you like to share, such as drawing, sports, reading, or gardening. Next, prepare what you need, like colors, books, or tools. Then, practice your hobby with your friends and don't worry about mistakes. Finally, enjoy sharing your hobby on your special day. Working together makes hobbies more exciting and fun.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or ,d:

1. Joining a Hobby Club at school can help students
a) sleep b) eat c) run d) make friends
2. Before starting a hobby, you should first think about your
a) talent b) homework c) uniform d) lunch

B Answer the following question:

3. Do you like to share your hobby?
▶
4. Summarize the steps students should follow in the Hobby Club.
▶
5. Give a suitable title to the text.
▶

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

(4Ms)

1. He (can't) come to school yesterday because he was sick.
2. Amal couldn't (drew) pictures when she was four.

6 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences: (2Ms)

1. the past - hobbies - you - could - What - do - in?

▶ ?

2. cycling - and - love - I - skating - the park - in.

▶

7 Punctuate the following: (4Ms)

1. what's your favorite hobby, maya?

▶

2. samy can do some crafting with paper

▶

8 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below: (7Ms)

"Different Hobbies Around Us"



▶ building things - reading stories - playing musical instruments

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Unit 2

At the doctor's

عند الطبيب

Learning Outcomes



Speaking

- Express their opinions and thoughts on health-related topics
- Tell a personal experience or a story related to feeling sick
- Present health tips they have created to their classmates



Listening

- Identify key information and main ideas from a dialog about a visit to a doctor's clinic
- Recall specific details and advice given in a conversation
- Recognize and recall vocabulary related to illnesses and the clinic



Reading

- Understand informational texts
- Extract specific information from a text to answer questions
- Follow written instructions and advice found in a text, such as health rules



Writing

- Use grammar rule to give advice or talk about obligations
- Write a short email including a subject line, greeting, and a brief message
- Create short, clear health tips for a bookmark

Lesson 1

A Day at the Clinic



Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية



clinic

عيادة



headache

صداع



sore throat

التهاب الحلق



cough

سعال / كحة



fever

حمى



medicine

دواء



pharmacy

صيدلية

Extra Vocabulary

الكلمات الإضافية

examination room

غرفة الفحص

stomach

معدة

soon

قريبًا

liquids

سوائل

toothache

ألم الأسنان

advice

نصيحة

rules

قواعد

blood pressure

ضغط الدم

stomachache

ألم في المعدة

check-up

فحص

Adjectives

صفات

sick	مريض	tired	مُرهَق
weak	ضعيف	serious	خطير
warm	دافئ	broken	مكسور
healthy	صحي	important	هام

Expressions and Prepositions

تعابير وحروف جر

feel well	يشعر بتحسن	at the clinic	في العيادة
don't look well	لا تبدو على ما يرام	What's wrong?	ما المشكلة؟
take medicine	يتناول الدواء	I hope	آمل أن
feel better quickly	يشعر بالتحسن بسرعة	stay healthy	حافظ على صحتك
Let's go!	هيا بنا!	for three days	لمدة ثلاثة أيام
look a little weak	تبدو ضعيفة قليلا	take care of	يعتني بـ

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past		PP	
check	يفحص	checked		checked	
hope	يتمنى	hoped		hoped	
rest	يستريح	rested		rested	
listen	يسمع	listened		listened	
cough	يسعل / يكح	coughed		coughed	
examine	يفحص	examined		examined	

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
hurt	يتأذي	hurt	hurt
feel	يشعر	felt	felt
come	يأتي	came	come
drink	يشرب	drank	drunk
know	يعرف	knew	known
take	يأخذ	took	taken
give	يعطي	gave	given
eat	يأكل	ate	eaten

Listen and read:



Fady's Check-Up الفحص الطبي لفادي

Fady: Ah... I feel so tired. My body hurts.

فادي: آه... أشعر بالتعب الشديد. جسدي يؤلمني.

Mother: You don't look well, Fady. What's wrong?

الأم: أنت لا تبدو بخير، فادي. ما المشكلة؟



Fady: I have a headache and a cough. I also have a sore throat and a fever.

فادي: أعاني من صداع وسعال. لدي أيضًا التهاب في الحلق وحمى.

Mother: Oh no! We have to go to the doctor.

الأم: يا إلهي! علينا أن نذهب إلى الطبيب.

(At the clinic)
(في العيادة)

Nurse: Hello, Fady. Please come to the examination room.

المرضة: مرحباً فادي. يرجى الحضور إلى غرفة الفحص.

Doctor: Well, Fady, how are you feeling today?

الطبيب: حسناً يا فادي، كيف تشعر اليوم؟

Fady: Not good, Doctor. My stomach hurts.

فادي: لست بخير يا دكتور. معدتي تؤلمني.

Doctor: You look a little weak, but it's not serious. You must rest and drink warm liquids. No ice cream for three days.

الطبيب: تبدو ضعيفاً بعض الشيء، لكن الأمر ليس خطيراً. يجب عليك الراحة وشرب السوائل الدافئة. غير مسموح بالآيس كريم لمدة ثلاثة أيام.

Fady: Oh no! But I love ice cream!

فادي: أوه لا! لكنني أحب الآيس كريم!

Doctor: I know, but you have to take care of yourself. You'll feel better soon.

الطبيب: أعلم، لكن عليك أن تعتني بنفسك. ستشعر بالتحسن قريباً.

Mother: Thank you, Doctor. Now, Fady, let's go to the pharmacy to get your medicine.

الأم: شكراً لك يا دكتور. الآن يا فادي، دعنا نذهب إلى الصيدلية للحصول على الدواء الخاص بك.

Fady: I hope I feel better quickly. I must take my medicine and rest.

فادي: أتمنى أن أشعر بالتحسن سريعاً. يجب أن أتناول دوائي وأرتاح.

Note:

● We use **have/has** to talk about how we feel when we are sick.

● Remember: ► I / You / We / They ➡ (**have**)

► He / She / It ➡ (**has**)

Examples:

► I have a headache.

► She has a cough.

Choose the correct answer

- Why did Fady's mother take him to the clinic?
 - because he wanted ice cream
 - because he felt sick
 - because he wanted to visit a friend
 - because he likes the clinic
- What advice did the doctor give Fady?
 - to eat ice cream
 - to go to the park
 - to rest and drink warm liquids
 - to do his homework
- What was one of the things that made Fady feel sick?
 - a toothache
 - a broken leg
 - high blood pressure
 - a sore throat
- Where did Fady and his mother go after seeing the doctor?
 - to the park
 - to school
 - to the pharmacy
 - to a restaurant

Exercises on Lesson 1

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Her son was sick, so she took him to the
 - clinic
 - club
 - park
 - garden
- I need to take an aspirin because I have a
 - lunch
 - homework
 - headache
 - picnic
- I have a terrible, so I can't eat anything.
 - blood
 - headache
 - injury
 - sore throat
- I went to the to buy some medicine yesterday.
 - court
 - shop
 - pharmacy
 - market
- She has a high and she is very warm.
 - mark
 - level
 - grade
 - fever
- You should cover your mouth when you
 - speak
 - cough
 - talk
 - go
- The helps patients in the hospital.
 - nurse
 - pilot
 - worker
 - teacher

8. The boy entered the room to have his check-up.
 a) game b) food c) drink d) examination
9. He can't eat, but he can drink only.
 a) cakes b) pasta c) liquids d) pizza
10. He felt because of the cold weather.
 a) healthy b) sick c) lost d) rude

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

headache - hurt - examination - medicine - clinic

Last week, my son was sick. He didn't feel well. His body ①
 We went to the ② The nurse let us enter the ③ room.
 The doctor asked my son about what he had, my son told him that he had a
 ④ and a cough. Also, when he tried to eat anything, he couldn't.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

Yesterday, Sara was very tired. She went to the clinic and waited for her turn to come. The nurse made her enter the examination room to have her check-up. The doctor asked her about what she felt. She told him that she had a fever and a stomachache. The doctor examined her then he told her to stop eating fast food and eat healthy food only. He said that she looked weak, but it's not serious. After she had left the clinic, she went to the pharmacy to get her medicine.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Yesterday, Sara went to the
 a) stadium b) clinic c) park d) shop
2. Sara looked weak, but it's not
 a) fun b) happy c) serious d) sad

B Answer the following questions:

3. How was Sara yesterday?

4. What did the doctor tell the speaker to do?

5. Where did Sara go to get the medicine?

4 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

1. has - a sore - throat - **She** - a fever - and.

▶

2. a little - and - **You** - tired - look - weak.

▶

3. are - week - you - **How** - this- feeling?

▶ ?

4. ice - for - **No** - three - cream - days.

▶

5. liquids - must - and - rest - **You** - warm - drink.

▶

5 Punctuate the following:

1. did you go to the clinic

▶

2. i feel very weak and tired

▶

3. how are you feeling this week

▶

4. he has a very terrible headache

▶

6 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

"Your day at the clinic"

▶ examination room - sore throat - medicine

.....

.....

.....

.....

Lesson 2

Staying Healthy at School



Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية



first aid kit

مندوق الإسعافات الأولية



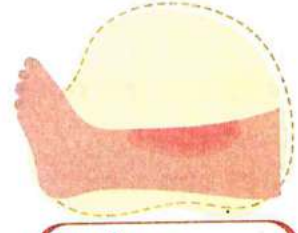
bandages

ضمادات



plasters

لاصقات



bruises

كدمات

Extra Vocabulary

الكلمات الإضافية

scissors

مقص

accidents

حوادث

hurt

ألم / أذى

injury

إصابة

permission

إذن

habit

عادة

cuts

جروح

waiting room

غرفة الإنتظار

Adjectives

صفات

injured

مُصاب

dangerous

خطير

clean

نظيف

ready

جاهز

full

مُمتلئ

empty

فارغ

worried

قلق

relaxed

مُسْتَرخٍ

safe

آمن

careful

حريص

heavy

ثقيل

light

خفيف

Expressions and Prepositions

تعابير وحروف جر

stay safe	يبقى آمناً	need for	تحتاجه لـ
get hurt	يتألم-يُجرح	right away	على الفور
without permission	دون إذن	make sure	يتأكد
feel too sick	يشعر بالمرض الشديد		

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past		PP	
follow	يتبع	followed		followed	
remember	يتذكر	remembered		remembered	
ignore	يتجاهل	ignored		ignored	
avoid	يتجنب	avoided		avoided	
stay	يبقى	stayed		stayed	

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past		PP	
show	يعرض	showed		shown	
take	يأخذ	took		taken	
learn	يتعلم	learnt		learnt	
spend	يقضي	spent		spent	



Read and learn



The First Aid Kit at School

صندوق الإسعافات الأولية في المدرسة

At our school, there's a big first aid kit in the nurse's room. It has everything we might need for small accidents. Inside, there are **bandages**, **plasters**, scissors, and medicine for **cuts and bruises**.



في مدرستنا، هناك صندوق اسعافات أولية كبير في غرفة الممرضة. فهو يحتوي على كل ما قد نحتاجه للحوادث الصغيرة. يوجد بداخله ضمادات ولصقات ومقص وأدوية للجروح والكدمات.

If a student gets hurt, the nurse has to check the first aid kit and help them right away. Students must tell a teacher or the nurse when someone is **injured**. We mustn't open the first aid kit without permission because some things inside can be dangerous.

إذا أصيب أحد الطلاب، يجب على الممرضة التحقق من صندوق الإسعافات الأولية مساعدتهم على الفور. يجب على الطلاب إخبار المعلم أو الممرضة عندما يتعرض شخص ما للإصابة. لا يجب علينا فتح صندوق الإسعافات الأولية دون إذن لأن بعض الأشياء الموجودة بالداخل قد تكون خطيرة.

Nurses must make sure the kit is always clean, ready, and full. They also must call parents if a student feels too sick. Students don't have to worry, because the nurse always knows how to help.

يجب على الممرضات التأكد من أن المجموعة نظيفة وجاهزة وممتلئة دائماً. يجب عليهم اسضاً الاتصال بأولياء الأمور إذا شعر الطالب بالمرض الشديد. لا داعي للقلق على الطلاب، لأن الممرضة تعرف دائماً كيفية مساعدتهم.

The first aid kit helps everyone stay safe at school — but we must all remember to be careful and play safely so we don't get hurt!

يساعد صندوق الإسعافات الأولية الجميع على البقاء آمنين في المدرسة، ولكن يجب علينا جميعاً أن نتذكر أن نكون حذرين ونلعب بأمان حتى لا نتعرض للأذى.

Choose the correct answer:



1. Where is the big first aid kit at school?
a) in the classroom b) in the nurse's room
c) in the playground d) in the teacher's office
2. What must students do when someone gets hurt?
a) help the student by themselves
b) ignore it and keep playing
c) tell a teacher or the nurse d) take the first aid kit
3. Why mustn't students open the first aid kit without permission?
a) because it's locked
b) because it can be dangerous
c) because it's only for teachers d) because it's too heavy

Language In Use



Have to/Don't have to vs. Must/Mustn't

When to use it:

● Have to	: obligation and necessity	متي يستخدم:
● Must	: obligation and strong rules	الالتزام والضرورة
● Mustn't	: not allowed	الالتزام والقواعد القوية
● Don't have to	: something not necessary	غير مسموح
		شيء غير ضروري

Form:

التكوين:

Subject + must / mustn't + base form of the verb

Examples:

- ▶ You **must wear** the uniform at school.
- ▶ You **mustn't park** your car here.

Form:

التكوين:

I/ We/ You/ They + have to + base form

He/ She/ It + has to + base form

Examples:

- ▶ They **have to brush** their teeth twice a day.
- ▶ She **has to wear** a mask when she has a cough.

Negative Form:

تكوين النفي:

I/ We/ You/ They + don't have to + base form

He/ She/ It + doesn't have to + base form

Examples:

- ▶ You **don't have to come** if you are sick.
- ▶ He **doesn't have to worry** about this small cut.

Fill in the blanks (**have to / don't have to**):Student's
Book

1. Students tell a teacher or the nurse if someone is injured.
2. Nurses make sure the first aid kit is always ready and full.
3. We worry about small cuts because the nurse knows how to help us.
4. You drink plenty of water every day to stay healthy.
5. Students bring their own bandages because the nurse already has them in the first aid kit.

Choose the correct answer:

1. Students (must - mustn't) wash their hands before lunch.
2. A patient (must - mustn't) see the doctor when sick.
3. Children (must - mustn't) eat too much candy when they are sick.
4. You (must - mustn't) brush your teeth every day to keep them healthy.
5. We (must - mustn't) cover our mouth when we cough.

Exercises on Lesson 2

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. She opened the first to treat the cut.
a) room b) aid kit c) kite d) door
2. He had a dark purple on his knee after bumping into the table.
a) bruise b) candy c) card d) fan
3. The nurse put a around his arm yesterday.
a) food b) sweater c) bag d) bandage
4. Put a on that small cut to keep it clean and protected.
a) soap b) soup c) sugar d) plaster
5. Stop running in the room or you'll get
a) hurt b) gift c) doll d) sweets
6. Two players were after the match.
a) injured b) babies c) engineers d) workers
7. You go in there. It's not allowed.
a) must b) have to c) mustn't d) doesn't have to
8. You bring your own food to the picnic. They'll provide lunch for everyone.
a) mustn't b) must c) doesn't have to d) don't have to

3 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

1. should - we - **What** - do - we - when - sick - feel?

▶ ?

2. big - kit - nurse's - **There's** - first-aid - a - in - room - the.

▶

3. before - wash - **Students** - their - must - hands - lunch.

▶

4. follow - **Students** - healthy - at - must - schools - habits.

▶

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. You (**not have to**) wear a uniform. We have a party today.

2. We (**must forget**) to lock the door when we leave.

3. He (**have to**) pay for the tickets.

4. He doesn't have to (**comes**) to the meeting if he's busy.

5. You must (**staying**) quiet in the library.

6. They (**not have to**) pay to enter the museum. It's free.

7. You (**must touch**) that wire! It's dangerous.

8. My sister (**have to**) get a visa to travel to America next month.

5 Read the text and answer the questions:

At our school, student's health is very important. There are small first aid kits in every classroom. The teacher has to keep them in a safe place. If someone gets a small cut, the teacher can use a plaster from the kit. Students must tell the teacher immediately if they get hurt. But students mustn't try to use the kit alone. We don't have to be scared of small accidents. Everyone must try to be safe. This way, we can all have fun and stay healthy at school.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. At our school, student's is very important.
 a) projects b) health c) games d) fun
2. There are small in every classroom.
 a) first aid kits b) computes c) mobile phones d) tablets

B Answer the following questions:

3. What mustn't students try to do?
4. Where does the teacher keep the first aid kits?
5. What will happen if a student gets a small cut?

6 Punctuate the following:

1. you must ask the teacher for help



2. ali takes care of his health



3. what should I do at school



4. how can we use the first aid kit



7 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

"We are Safe at School"

► first aid kit - nurse - clean



.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Lesson 3

Healing Hands, Caring Hearts



Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية



hospital

مستشفى



treatment

علاج



donations

تبرعات



receptionist

موظف استقبال

Extra Vocabulary

الكلمات الإضافية

care

رعاية

hope

أمل

tests

فحوصات

plan

خطة

playrooms

غرف اللعب

teamwork

العمل الجماعي

location

موقع

adults

البالغين

Adjectives

صفات

famous

مشهور

known

معروف

friendly

ودود

fun

ممتع

better

أفضل

strong

قوي

hopeful

متفائل

comfortable

مريح

free

مجاني

expensive

غالي

Expressions and Prepositions

تعبيرات و حروف جر

for free	مجاناً	at low cost	بتكلفة منخفضة
around the world	حول العالم	check in	يسجل وصول
full of hope	مليء بالأمل	getting better	يتحسن
located in	يقع في	work together	يعملوا معاً

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
donate	يتبرع	donated	donated
arrive	يصل	arrived	arrived
explain	يشرح	explained	explained
continue	يستمر	continued	continued
describe	يصف	described	described

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
say	يقول	said	said
set up	يُعد / يُجهز	set up	set up



Read the story



Hospital 57-3-57: A Place of Hope

مستشفى 57-3-57: مكان الأمل

Hospital 57-3-57 is a famous children's hospital in Cairo, Egypt. It is known not only in Egypt but also around the world. The hospital is very big and helps children who are sick. The most important thing is that all treatment is free for the children. Families do not have to pay because many people in Egypt donate money to the hospital. These donations help children get the care they need and give their families hope.



مستشفى 57-3-57 هي مستشفى مشهورة للأطفال في القاهرة، مصر. وهي معروفة ليس فقط في مصر ولكن أيضًا في جميع أنحاء العالم. المستشفى كبيرة جدًا تساعد الأطفال المرضى. الشيء الأكثر أهمية هو أن كل العلاج مجاني للأطفال. لا يجب على العائلات الدفع لأن العديد من الأشخاص في مصر يتبرعون بالمال للمستشفى. تساعد هذه التبرعات الأطفال في الحصول على الرعاية التي يحتاجونها وتمنح أسرهم الأمل.

When children arrive, a friendly receptionist helps them check in. Then a nurse takes them to the examination room for tests. After the tests, the doctor explains the treatment plan. The hospital also has playrooms, libraries, and other fun places so children can feel happy and safe. Teachers help children continue their studies while they are getting better.

عند وصول الأطفال، يساعدهم موظف الاستقبال الودود في تسجيل الوصول. ثم تأخذهم الممرضة إلى غرفة الفحص لإجراء الاختبارات. بعد الاختبارات، يشرح الطبيب خطة العلاج. تحتوي المستشفى أيضًا على غرف ألعاب ومكتبات وأماكن ترفيهية أخرى حتى يشعر الأطفال بالسعادة والأمان. يساعد المعلمون الأطفال على مواصلة دراستهم أثناء فترة التحسن.

Hospital 57-3-57 is full of hope. It shows that donations and teamwork help every child become strong and healthy again.

مستشفى 57-3-57 مليئة بالأمل. وتُظهر أن التبرعات والعمل الجماعي يساعد كل طفل على أن يصبح قويًا وصحيًا مرة أخرى.

Write (T) True or (F) False:

1. Hospital 57-3-57 is only for adults. (.....)
2. Doctors and nurses work together to help children. (.....)
3. Families must pay a lot of money to get treatment. (.....)
4. The hospital has playrooms and libraries for children. (.....)
5. Many people in Egypt donate money to help the hospital. (.....)



Student's Book

Read the text again and find the words or phrases that answer the questions:

1. The city where Hospital 57-3-57 is located
2. A person who helps children check in when they arrive at the hospital
3. Places in the hospital where children can have fun
4. A person who explains the treatment plan to the children
5. A word that describes giving money to help the hospital



Student's Book

Word Building Skills

Use:

الاستخدام

The suffix **-able / -ible** is added to the end of a word to form an adjective.

تتم إضافة اللاحقة **-able / -ible** إلى نهاية الكلمة لتكوين صفة.

Examples:

▶ comfortable	→ able to feel relaxed	مريح / مستريح
▶ curable	→ able to be cured	يمكن علاجه
▶ accessible	→ easy to reach	يمكن الوصول إليه
▶ washable	→ can be washed	يمكن غسله
▶ readable	→ worthy of reading	يستحق القراءة
▶ visible	→ can be seen	مرئي (يمكن رؤيته)
▶ enjoyable	→ can be enjoyed	ممتع



Pronunciation Tips!

- The ending **-able** is usually pronounced /əbl/ com-fort-a-ble, read-a-ble
- The ending **-ible** is usually pronounced /ɪbl/ ac-cess-i-ble, revers-i-ble
- **Stress** is usually on the first syllable of the base word: COM-fort-able, CURE-able

عادة ما يكون التشديد على المقطع الأول من الكلمة الأساسية: COM-fort-able, CURE-able

Exercises on Lesson 3

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. After the accident, they took him to the for an X-ray.
a) hospital b) school c) office d) bank
2. Please give your name to the when you arrive at the hotel.
a) player b) farmer c) receptionist d) dentist
3. The nurses give excellent for all their patients.
a) money b) projects c) care d) stars
4. The doctor asked us for some blood after check-up.
a) pressure b) cream c) makers d) tests
5. Public are important places where people can borrow books.
a) hospitals b) clinics c) farms d) libraries
6. The new is perfect. The patient gets better quickly.
a) teamwork b) treatment c) work d) transport
7. The hospital needs to give the medicine for free to sick people.
a) towers b) bridges c) donations d) chairs
8. That restaurant is for having the best pizza in the city.
a) dirty b) known c) worried d) dangerous

9. It's for children under five years old to enter the museum.
 a) free b) prey c) ancient d) old
10. The children here are very; they always help each other.
 a) cruel b) coward c) shy d) friendly

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

check-in - free - treatment - donate - expensive

The hospital in our city is very big. It helps sick people for ①
 Families do not have to pay because many people ② money
 to it. When people arrive, a friendly receptionist helps them ③
 Then a nurse takes them to the examination room for tests. After that, the
 doctor explains the ④ plan.

3 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

1. treatments - free - in - **Some** - are - hospitals.
 *
2. is - around - **This** - the - known - world - hospital.
 *
3. children - get - help - good - **Donations** - care.
 *
4. 57-3-57 - Hospital - to - give- **Does** - hope - children?
 ?
5. plan - doctor - the- explains- **The** - treatment.
 *

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Hospital 57-3-57 is a famous place for sick children in Cairo. It is very big and known around the world. It's very important thing about it that the treatment is free. Families don't have to pay because kind people give donations. This money gives children the care they need. A friendly receptionist smiles at each child when they arrive. Doctors and nurses

do tests to find the problem. To help kids feel happy, there are libraries, playrooms, and teachers. This hospital is a place of hope. It is known for helping every child become strong and healthy again.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Hospital 57-3-57 is located in
 a) Luxor b) Cairo c) Aswan d) Port Said
2. The treatment is there.
 a) costly b) expensive c) free d) rich

B Answer the following questions:

3. Why don't families have to pay?
4. What do doctors and nurses do?
5. What is this hospital known for?

5 Punctuate the following:

1. have you donated for hospitals before
 ►
2. mona helps sick children in the hospital
 ►
3. are doctors and nurses friendly here
 ►
4. omar bought a comfortable chair yesterday
 ►

6 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

"The importance of donations"

► help – sick people – treatment

.....

.....

.....

.....

Lessons 4-5

Writing: Sick Leave Request
Project: Think and Create

Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية



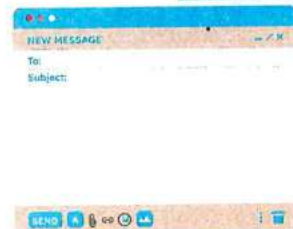
stickers

ملصقات



bookmark

فاصل كتاب



email

بريد إلكتروني

Extra Vocabulary

الكلمات الإضافية

person

شخص

request

طلب

patterns

نقوش

business

عمل

explanation

تفسير

subject

موضوع

brain

مخ

greeting

تحية

closing sentence

جملة ختامية

tip

معلومة / نصيحة

Adjectives

صفات

polite

مؤدب

rude

وقح

formal

رسمي

informal

غير رسمي

fit

مناسب

bright

مشرق

Expressions and Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر

sick leave

الإجازة المرضية

for two days

لمدة يومين

at home

في المنزل

reason for

سبب لـ

Expressions and Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر

come back	يعود	related to	متعلق بـ
Best regards,	مع أطيب التحيات،	at the end	في النهاية
away from	بعيداً عن	plenty of water	الكثير من الماء

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
receive	يستلم / يتلقى	received	received
return	يعود	returned	returned
create	يبتكر	created	created
exercise	يتمرن	exercised	exercised

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
send	يرسل	sent	sent
let	يسمح	let	let
understand	يفهم	understood	understood

 Read the following email:



A Sick Day: Business Email

① From: Karim

من: كريم

The person who is sending the email

الشخص الذي يرسل البريد الإلكتروني

② To: Ramy

إلى: رامي

The person who is receiving the email

الشخص الذي يتلقى البريد الإلكتروني

3 **Subject: Sick Leave for Two Days**

الموضوع: إجازة مرضية لمدة يومين

The subject line tells what the email is about.

سطر الموضوع يخبرنا عن موضوع البريد الإلكتروني

4 **Dear Mr. Ramy,**

عزيزي السيد رامي،

Greeting: we start with "Dear" + the person's name

I am writing to let you know that I am not feeling well today. I have a fever and a sore throat, so I need to rest at home.

التحية: نبدأ بـ "عزيزي" + اسم الشخص.

أكتب إليكم لأخبركم أنني لست على ما يرام اليوم. عندي حمى والتهاب في الحلق، لذلك أحتاج إلى الراحة في المنزل.

5 **Reason for writing and short explanation**

سبب الكتابة والشرح المختصر

I will not be able to come to work for two days. I hope to feel better and return on Wednesday, October 15th.

لن أتمكن من الحضور إلى العمل لمدة يومين. أأمل أن أشعر بتحسن و العودة يوم الاربعاء 15 أكتوبر.

6 **Explain how long the leave will be and when you'll come back.**

اشرح مدة الإجازة ومتى ستعود.

Thank you for your understanding.

شكراً لتفهمك.

7 **A polite closing sentence**

جملة ختامية مهذبة

Best regards,

أطيب التحيات،

8 **A formal closing**

خاتمة رسمية

Karim Hassan

كريم حسن

Your full name at the end

اسمك الكامل في النهاية

Read Karim's email carefully. Write (T) true or (F) false



1. Karim had a stomachache and a headache. (.....)
2. The subject of the email is "Sick Leave for Two Days." (.....)
3. Karim will be away from work for two days. (.....)
4. The email is from Karim to Ramy. (.....)
5. Karim says that he feels great and wants to go to work. (.....)



Practice writing a formal email

From :

To :

Subject :

Dear

I am writing to let you know

(Reason for writing and short explanation)

(Explain how long, when, or what will happen next.)

(A polite closing sentence)

(A formal closing)

(Your full name at the end)



Think and Create

● How to create a bookmark:

"Travel Adventure Book"

Follow these guiding steps:

① Take a strip of paper in the shape of a bookmark.

١. خذ شريطًا من الورق على شكل فاصل كتاب.

② Front Side:

- Write a title for your bookmark, like "Healthy Habits" or "Stay Strong!"
- Draw something related to health, like fruits, water, soap, or a fit person.

٢. الجانب الأمامي:

اكتب عنوانًا لفاصل الكتاب، مثل "العادات الصحية" أو "ابق قويا!"
ارسم شيئًا متعلقًا بالصحة، مثل الفواكه أو الماء أو الصابون أو الشخص المناسب.

3 Back Side

Write 2-4 short health tips.

٣. الجانب الخلفي

اكتب 2-4 نصائح صحية قصيرة.

Examples:

- ▶ "Wash your hands." اغسل يديك
- ▶ "Eat vegetables." تناول الخضار
- ▶ "Drink water every day." اشرب الماء كل يوم
- ▶ "Don't eat too much junk food." لا تأكل الكثير من الوجبات السريعة.

4 Decorate:

- Add colors, stickers, or patterns to make your bookmark bright and fun.

٤. التزيين:

أضف ألوانًا أو ملصقات أو نقوشًا لجعل فاصل الكتاب ملونًا وممتعًا.

5 Share:

- Show your bookmark to the class and read your health tips aloud.

٥. شارك:

اعرض فاصل الكتاب الخاص بك على الصف واقرأ نصائحك الصحية بصوت عالٍ.

Exercises on Lessons 4 & 5

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Please send me a/an with the meeting details by this afternoon.

a) car

b) email

c) boat

d) taxi

2. He had to take three days of sick because of the cough.
a) leave b) return c) sleep d) land
3. His family started a small selling handmade crafts online.
a) sun b) planet c) business d) comet
4. Don't forget to put a to know the page, you stopped on.
a) book b) lamp c) bread d) bookmark
5. The teacher gave the children colorful for doing their homework well.
a) stickers b) moons c) rooms d) schools
6. If you exercise, you will be
a) fat b) thick c) giant d) fit
7. It is a way to say "please" and "thank you".
a) rude b) polite c) healthy d) black
8. When you exercise, remember to drink of water
a) plenty b) bread c) cake d) none
9. The last part of an email is called the
a) greeting b) closing c) paper d) leave
10. The reason being late was the bad weather.
a) at b) for c) on d) about

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

reason - fever - better - send - Take

When you are too sick, you have to take sick leave. You should
 ① an email to your manager. Give a clear ②
 for your staying at home like having a fever. ③ rest at home,
 drink plenty of water, and take your time to get ④ This keeps
 everyone safe.

3 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

1. her - **She** - email - an - received - boss - from.

▶

2. needs - two - **He** - days - leave - for - sick.

▶

3. to - **Do** - keep - exercise - your - strong - body.

▶

4. headache - stomachache - had - **Karim** - a - and - a.

▶ ?

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Dear Mr. Ahmed,

I am sending this e-mail to tell you that I cannot come to work today, as I feel sick. The reason for that is a high fever and a sore throat.

I will take today as sick leave to have rest. I have already told my team about my work for the day. I will check my email if they need to ask me about anything.

I hope to be fit and return to work tomorrow. Thank you for your understanding.

Best regards,

Salma

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Salma is sending a/an to her manager.

a) email

b) letter

c) car

d) paper

2. Salma feels

a) happy

b) sick

c) calm

d) quiet

B Answer the following questions:

3. Why is Salma sick?



4. What did Salma tell Mr. Ahmed about?



5. What has Salma told her team about?



5 Punctuate the following:

1. he has to take sick leave



2. what should I do for rest



3. malak is sending an email today



4. how are you feeling these days



6 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

"Your Father's Sick Leave"



▶ sore throat - fever - email

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Review on Unit 2

Main Vocabulary

clinic	عيادة	headache	صداع
sore throat	التهاب الحلق	cough	سعال
fever	حمى	medicine	دواء
pharmacy	صيدلية	bandages	ضمادات
first aid kit	مندوق الإسعافات الأولية	plasters	اللمقات
bruises	كدمات	hospital	مستشفى
treatment	علاج	receptionist	موظف الاستقبال
donations	تبرعات	stickers	مذنب
bookmark	فاصل كتاب	email	بريد إلكتروني

Language Notes



Have to / Don't have to vs. Must / Mustn't for rules

- **Have to:** obligation and necessity
- **Must:** obligation and strong rules
- **don't have to:** something not necessary
- **mustn't:** not allowed

Examples:

- ▶ You **must follow** your school rules.
- ▶ You **have to eat** your meal in the morning.
- ▶ She **has to be** quiet in the class.
- ▶ You **mustn't shout** at hospitals.
- ▶ They **don't have to come** early today.
- ▶ He **doesn't have to tell** us the story.

Pronunciation

- The ending **-able** is usually pronounced /əbl/ com-fort-a-ble, read-a-ble
- The ending **-ible** is usually pronounced /ɪbl/ ac-cess-i-ble, revers-i-ble
- Stress is usually on the first syllable of the base word: COM-fort-able, CURE-able

Dictation:

sore throat	ألم الأسنان
clinic	معدة
headache	نميحة
pharmacy	فحص
medicine	حوادث
fever	إصابة
cough	مقص
bruises	ألم / أذى
plasters	إذن
bandages	جروح
first aid kit	أمل
receptionist	مخ
donations	العمل الجماعي
treatment	البالغين
hospital	رعاية
stickers	فحوصات
bookmark	غرف اللعب
email	موقع

Writing Samples

"Your Day at the clinic"

First, I checked in with the receptionist. Then, I stayed in the waiting room. A friendly nurse calls my name for tests. The doctor examined me and explains the treatment. I get the medicine I need from the pharmacy. Finally, I came home to get some rest.

"We are Safe at School"

At school, we all are safe. We walk, but we don't run. Our teachers know what to do if anyone gets hurt. If we feel sick or get a small cut, we go to the nurse's room. She has a big first aid kit. At our school, we all learn and play in a safe place.

"The importance of donations"

Donations are very important. They give help to people when they need it. Money can build schools and buy medicine for hospitals. Sick people can get their treatment for free. Donations give hope. We can make a big change for someone's life.

"Your Father's Sick Leave"

My father took sick leave last week. The reason for that was a bad high fever. He sent a polite email to his office. He must rest at home. He must drink plenty of water. We helped him to get better. He will come back to work when he is fit again.

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب.



1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

(6Ms)

1. There is a big first aid kit in the (teacher's - nurse's - class) room.
2. We might need it for small (room - accidents - exams).
3. There are (bandages - pencils - cars), plasters and scissors.

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box: (4Ms)

cough - hurts - clinic - wrong

Karim : I feel so tired, mom. My body ①

Mother: What's ② Karim?

Karim : I have a headache and a ③

Mother: Oh no! We have to go to the ④ now.

3 Choose the correct answer:

(4Ms)

1. The new is perfect. He gets better quickly.
a) teamwork b) treatment c) work d) transport
2. That restaurant is for having the best food in the city.
a) dirty b) known c) worried d) dangerous
3. Your father is sleeping, so we make too much noise.
a) mustn't b) have to c) must d) doesn't have to
4. You to come early for the party today.
a) has b) must c) mustn't d) have

4 Read and correct the underlined mistakes: (8Ms)

1. Sally have to play with her young sister. (.....)
2. Ahmed must shout in the street. (.....)
3. They doesn't have to go to work. It's holiday. (.....)
4. They must studying hard for exams. (.....)

5 Read the following passage, then answer the questions: (10Ms)

The Children's Cancer Hospital in Egypt is a special place of hope. It is one of the largest and most famous hospitals for children. The best part is that all treatment there is free for everyone. This happens because of the donations from people across the country and the world. When a child arrives, a kind receptionist welcomes them with a smile. Doctors and nurses make careful tests to plan care.

A Read and write T(True) or F(False):

1. The receptionist in the hospital is very angry and nervous. (.....)
2. The treatment is free for everyone. (.....)

B Choose the correct answer:

3. The Children's Cancer Hospital is famous for treating (men - women - children).
4. All treatment there is (free - expensive - rich) for everyone.
5. Doctors and nurses make careful (food - soup - tests).

6 Write a short paragraph of (4) sentences using the following guiding words: (8Ms)

"A Day at the Clinic"

Guiding elements: ► examination room - fever - pharmacy

.....

.....

.....



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

(2Ms)

1. Adam was at the park. (.....)
2. A friendly receptionist asked Adam for him name. (.....)
3. The doctor gave Adam some books. (.....)
4. The doctor told Adam to stop eating ice cream. (.....)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

(2Ms)

1. His family started a small selling handmade crafts online.
 a) sun b) planet c) business d) comet
2. You to eat all the cakes if you're full.
 a) don't have b) must c) have d) doesn't have
3. Visitors touch the artwork in the museum It's not allowed..
 a) must b) mustn't c) have to d) has to
4. I went to the to buy some medicine yesterday.
 a) court b) shop c) pharmacy d) market

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (2Ms)

clean - room - better - cut - plaster

Ahmed was playing football when he fell on his knee. He had a small
 ① He went home, washed the it carefully with water and
 soap to ② it. Then, he dried it and put a ③ over
 it to keep it safe. His mom told him to rest and he will get ④
 soon.

4

Read the text and answer the questions:

(7Ms)

Our home has a red first aid kit on the wall. It contains important things like bandages, plasters, clean wipes, and scissors. If anyone gets a small cut or a bruise, we must tell our parents right away. We mustn't open the kit because somethings inside it might be dangerous. My mom makes sure that the kit is clean, full, and ready. The kit keeps everyone safe at home. But we all must be careful every day so that no one gets hurt. That is the best way to stay safe.

A

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or ,d:

- Their home has a red on the wall.
a) picture b) clock c) window d) first aid kit
- The kit keeps everyone
a) safe b) fat c) big d) red

B

Answer the following question:

- What does the kit contain?



- Why mustn't we open the kit?



- Write a suitable title for the text.



5

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:
(4Ms)

- We (has to) run or we'll miss the bus.
- He (not have to) sleep late because tomorrow is a holiday.

Term 2

6 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences: (2Ms)

1. her - She - email - an - sent - friend - to.

▶

2. children - get - help - good - Donations - the - care.

▶

7 Punctuate the following: (4Ms)

1. how is your son this week

▶

2. ahmed has a headache and a fever

▶

8 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below: (7Ms)

"Why donations are important"



▶ sick people - free - treatment

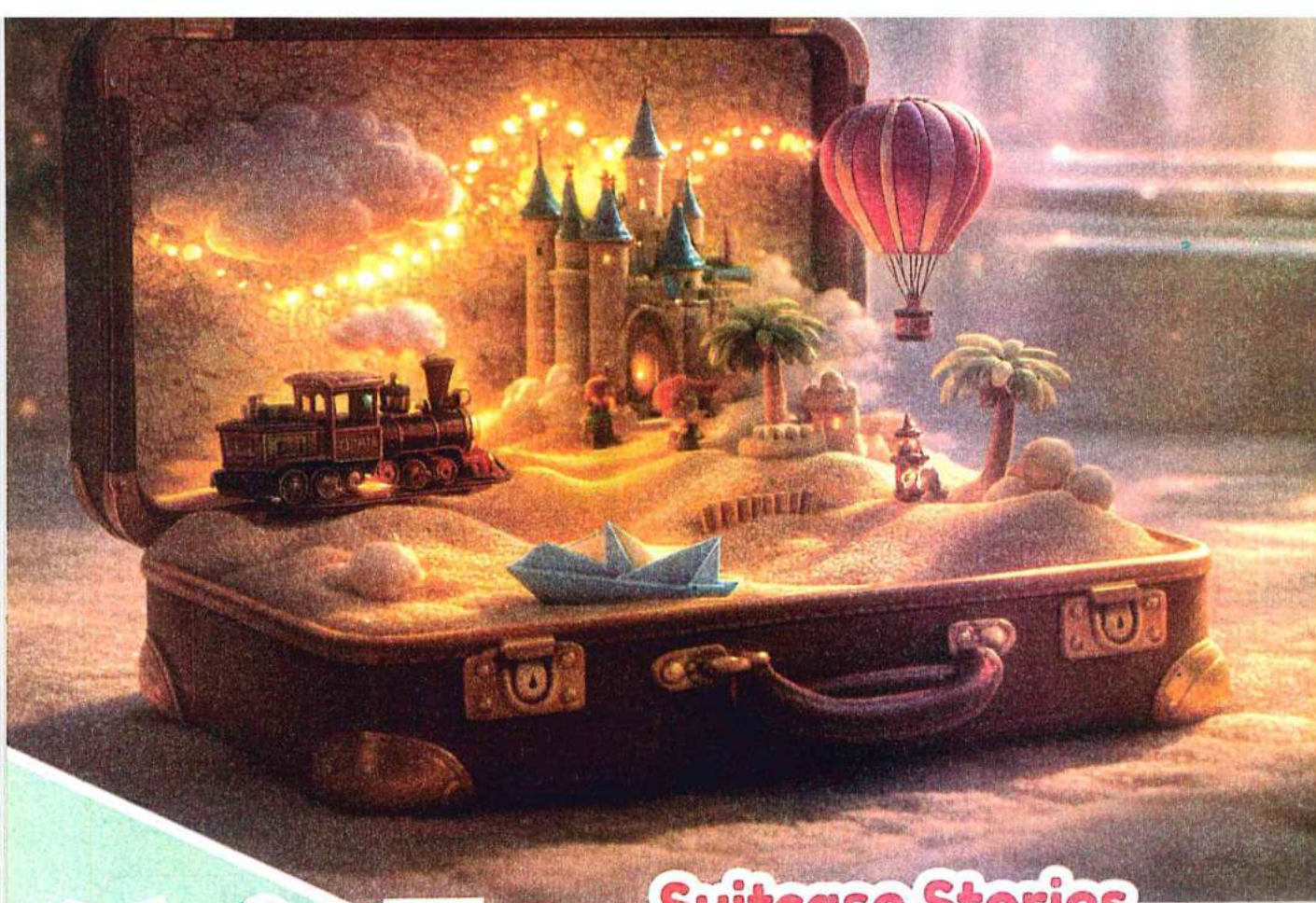
.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Unit 3

Suitcase Stories

قصص حقيبة السفر

Learning Outcomes



Speaking

- use target vocabulary to discuss travel preparations and destinations
- express future plans and intentions using "going to" in affirmative, negative, and question forms
- talk about future travel plans in a role play format



Listening

- identify the gist in short dialogs about travel plans
- identify specific details in short dialogs about travel plans
- recognize the meaning of travel related unknown vocabulary in spoken texts



Reading

- identify the main idea in short text about Egypt and camping
- identify key details in texts about travel experiences
- recognize the meaning of unknown words using clues



Writing

- write about future plans using "going to"
- write an informal email invitation to a friend
- design a Travel adventure book

Lesson 1

Off We Go!



Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية



suitcase

حقيرة سفر



pack

يحزم أمتعته



travel

يسافر



crowded

مزدحم



Bibliotheca Alexandrina

مكتبة الاسكندرية



beach

شاطئ



ticket

تذكرة



citadel

قلعة

Extra Vocabulary

الكلمات الإضافية

sand castles

قلاع من الرمال

library

مكتبة

packing

حزم الأمتعة

swimming suit

بدلة السباحة

clothes

الملابس

toothbrush

فرشاة أسنان

vacation

عطلة

sunscreen

واقى الشمس

Adjectives

صفات

glad

سعيد

whole

كل

amazing

مدهش

excited

متحمس

empty

فارغ

sandy

رملية

Expressions and Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر

I can't believe.	لا أصدق.	not yet	ليس بعد
great idea	فكرة رائعة	double-check	يتأكد مرة أخرى / يراجع جيدًا
to make sure!	للتأكد من	I can't wait to...	لا أستطيع الانتظار أن
by the way	بالمناسبة	summer holiday	الإجازة الصيفية
That's okay!	لا بأس!	best friends	أعز الصديقين

Definitions تعريفات

suitcase	a large bag for clothes when traveling
pack	to put things in a bag before a trip
travel	to go to another place
crowded	full of many people
beach	a sandy place near the sea
ticket	something that proves you can enter a place or get a service

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
believe	يعتقد	believed	believed
decide	يقرر	decided	decided
pack	يحزم	packed	packed
travel	يسافر	travelled	travelled
prove	يثبت / يبرهن	proved	proved / proven
plan	يخطط	planned	planned

Present		Past	PP
swim	يسبح	swam	swum
put	يضع	put	put
build	يبني	built	built
forget	ينسى	forgot	forgotten
sleep	ينام	slept	slept
make	يصنع	made	made

Listen and read



Last-Minute Packing

حزم الأمتعة في آخر لحظة

Sara : Sohaila, I'm so excited - we're finally going to **travel** to Alexandria tomorrow!

سارة : سهيلة، أنا متحمسة جدًا - سنسافر أخيرًا إلى الإسكندرية غدًا!



Sohaila: I'm so excited too! Did you **pack** your **suitcase**?

سهيلة : وأنا متحمسة جدًا أيضًا! هل حزمت حقبتك؟

Sara : Not yet. I'm going to **pack** tonight. I need to put in my summer clothes, my swimming suit, and my camera. What about you?

سارة : ليس بعد. سأحزمها الليلة. أحتاج أن أضع ملابس الصيف وملابس السباحة وكاميرتي. ماذا عنك؟

Sohaila: I already packed my **suitcase** yesterday! I put in everything except my toothbrush. By the way, do you have our bus **tickets**?

سهيلة : لقد حزمت حقيتي بالفعل أمس! وضعت فيها كل شيء ما عدا فرشاة أسناني. بالمناسبة، هل معك تذاكر الحافلة الخاصة بنا؟

Sara : Yes, my mother has all the **tickets**. She told me the bus is going to be very **crowded** because it's the summer vacation and many families are **traveling**.

سارة : نعم، أمي لديها جميع التذاكر. أخبرتني أن الحافلة ستكون مزدحمة جدًا لأنها إجازة الصيف والعديد من العائلات تسافر.

Sohaila: That's okay. We can sing songs together to make the time pass quickly!

سهيلة : لا بأس. يمكننا أن نغني الأغاني معًا لجعل الوقت يمر بسرعة!

Sara : Great idea! What are you most excited to see in Alexandria?

سارة : فكرة رائعة! ما أكثر شيء أنت متحمسة لرؤيته في الإسكندرية؟

Sohaila: I really want to see Qaitbay **Citadel** and the new library, **Bibliotheca Alexandrina**. And of course, I can't wait to swim and build sand castles by the beach!

سهيلة : أريد حقًا رؤية قلعة قايتباي والمكتبة الجديدة، مكتبة الإسكندرية. وبالطبع، لا يمكنني الانتظار للسباحة وبناء قصور رملية على الشاطئ!

Sara : Me too! The beach in Alexandria is so beautiful. Don't forget to put sunscreen in your **suitcase** when you finish **packing**.

سارة : وأنا أيضًا! شاطئ الإسكندرية جميل جدًا. لا تنسي أن تضعي واقي الشمس في حقبتك عندما تنتهي من حزم أمتعتك.

Sohaila: I won't! I'm going to double-check my **suitcase** before I go to sleep to make sure I didn't forget anything.

سهيلة : لن أنسى! سأؤكد من حقبتي مرة أخرى قبل أن أنام للتأكد من أنني لم أنسى أي شيء.

Sara : Me too. Well, I should go home now and start **packing** my **suitcase**. I'll see you tomorrow at the bus station!

سارة : وأنا أيضًا. حسنًا، يجب أن أذهب إلى المنزل الآن وأبدأ في حزم حقبتي. سأراك غدًا في محطة الأتوبيس!

Sohaila: See you!

سهيلة : أراك لاحقًا!

Write (T) True or (F) False:

Student's
Book

1. The girls are traveling to Alexandria. ()
2. Sara already packed her suitcase. ()
3. Sohaila packed her suitcase yesterday. ()
4. The bus is going to be empty during their trip. ()
5. They plan to visit Qaitbay Citadel in Alexandria. ()

Exercises on Lesson 1

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Before travelling, my dad his suitcase.
a) baked b) packed c) booked d) blocked
2. Our city is very and noisy, we want to move to another one.
a) calm b) quiet c) crowded d) peaceful
3. We went to Alexandria; it has an amazing for swimming.
a) beach b) board c) rug d) wall
4. My brother is going to to London next week.
a) eat b) drink c) sleep d) travel
5. My friend bought a to pack his clothes for travelling.
a) scooter b) car c) suitcase d) bike
6. We visited the in Egypt, it is a great modern library.
a) Bibliotheca Alexandrina b) Karnak
c) Fela d) Pyramids
7. Before going to the beach, make sure you put in to protect your skin from the sun.
a) sandwich b) car c) sunscreen d) saver
8. I spent the day on the beach building a
a) holiday b) sand castle c) bus station d) vacation

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

swimming suit - crowded - vacation - building - suitcases

It's the first summer trip together. We are going to pack our ① after dinner. My sister is going to buy her a ② tonight. The beach isn't going to be ③, so I will have a peaceful time. My brother and I decide to start the day on the beach by ④ a sand castle. I can't wait to have fun and feel the warm sun.

3 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

1. summer - finally - Our - trip - here - is.

.....

2. pack - your - Did - suitcase - you - black?

..... ?

3. We - travel - Alexandria - going to - are - to.

.....

4. bus - Do - ticket - your - have - you?

..... ?

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

The sun was bright, and the sky was clear. It was the first day of our summer vacation, and my family decided to go to the beach. It wasn't crowded, so we had a peaceful time. I spent the morning building a huge sandcastle while my sister swam in the water.

Later, we had a picnic under a large umbrella. We ate delicious sandwiches and juicy watermelon. As the sun began to set, we packed our things. It was the perfect start to our vacation.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The beach wasn't

a) beautiful

b) amazing

c) nice

d) crowded

2. They had a picnic under a large

a) tent

b) umbrella

c) bed

d) rug

B

Answer the following questions:

3. What did they eat?



4. What did the speaker spend the morning doing?



5. Describe the weather in their first day of summer vacation.



5

Punctuate the following:

1. did you enjoy your summer vacation



2. adam went to alexandria last week.



3. what did you visit yesterday



4. reem built a sandcastle last vacation



6

Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

"Your Last Summer Vacation"



► Where? ► With whom? ► What did you do?

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Lesson 2

Discovering Egypt



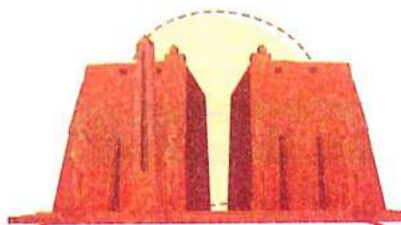
Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية



the Pyramids

الأهرامات



Egyptian temple

معبد مصري



museum

متحف



Temple of Karnak

معبد الكرنك



cruise

رحلة نهريّة



the Sphinx

أبو الهول

Extra Vocabulary

الكلمات الإضافية

outfit

ملابس / طقم

heritage

إرث

sunglasses

نظارة شمس

weather

طقس

tomb

مقبرة

adventure

مغامرة

south

جنوب

pharaohs

فراعنة

Ramses II

رمسيس الثاني

island

جزيرة

language

لغة

chance

فرصة

Adjectives

صفات

special	خاص	great	عظيم
light	خفيف	powerful	قوي
ancient	عتيق \ قديم	traditional	تقليدي

Expressions and Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر

move abroad	ينتقل للخارج	Get ready!	إستعد!
excited to see	متحمس لرؤية	learn about	يتعلم عن
open-air museum	متحف في الهواء الطلق	on the beach	على الشاطئ
finally...	أخيراً	It's a chance for...	إنها لفرصة ل...

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
move	يتحرك	moved	moved
call	يُسمى	called	called
explore	يستكشف	explored	explored
learn	يتعلم	learned	learned
visit	يزور	visited	visited

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
show	يعرض	showed	shown
get	يحصل على	got	got\gotten

Present		Past	PP
take	يأخذ	took	taken
ride	يركب	rode	ridden
spend	يقضي	spent	spent

Read and learn



A Special Trip Home

رحلة خاصة إلى الوطن

Next week, Mr. Maged and his family are going to travel to their home country, Egypt! He is Egyptian, but he moved abroad many years ago. Now, he wants to show his family the most beautiful places on their one-week vacation.



الأسبوع المقبل، سيسافر السيد ماجد وعائلته في رحلة إلى وطنهم، مصر! هو مصري، لكنه انتقل إلى الخارج منذ سنوات عديدة. الآن، يريد أن يري عائلته أجمل الأماكن خلال إجازتهم التي تستغرق أسبوعًا واحدًا.

First, they are getting ready with their suitcases, where they packed light outfits, hats and sunglasses for the hot weather. Their adventure starts in Cairo. They are going to see the Great Pyramids of Giza and the Sphinx. They are very excited to see tombs of ancient Egyptian kings, as their father told them stories about the ancient pharaohs who built them. أولاً، يستعدون بحقائبهم، حيث وضعوا الملابس الخفيفة والقبعات والنظارات الشمسية للطقس الحار. تبدأ مغامرهم في القاهرة، حيث سيذهبون لرؤية الأهرامات الكبرى في الجيزة وأبو الهول. إنهم متحمسون جدًا لرؤية مقابر ملوك مصر القدماء، كما أن والدهم قد حكى لهم قصصًا عن الفراعنة الذين بنوها.

Then, they are going to take a train south to Luxor. People often call it the "world's greatest open-air museum." There, they are going to explore the amazing temples of Karnak and Luxor and learn about powerful kings like Ramses II.

ثم سيستقلون القطار متجهين جنوبًا إلى الأقصر. غالبًا ما يُسميها الناس "أعظم متحف في الهواء الطلق في العالم". هناك، سيستكشفون المعابد الرائعة في الكرنك والأقصر، ويتعرفون على ملوك أقوياء مثل رمسيس الثاني.

They are going to Aswan on a beautiful Nile cruise. They are going to take a boat called "felucca" and see the beautiful islands.

سيتوجهون إلى أسوان في رحلة نيلية جميلة. سيستقلون قاربًا يُسمى "فلوكة" ويرون الجزر الجميلة.

Finally, they are going to spend the last two days of their trip in Alexandria. They are going to swim in the sea and build sandcastles on its famous beach. This trip is a wonderful chance for the family to know their country together.

أخيرًا، سيقضون آخر يومين من رحلتهم في الإسكندرية. سيسبحون في البحر ويبنون قلاعًا رملية على شاطئها الشهير. هذه الرحلة فرصة رائعة للعائلة للتعرف على بلدهم معًا.

Choose the correct answer:



1. Why is this trip to Egypt very special for Mr. Maged's family?

- a) Because Egypt has the best beaches in the world
- b) Because they are going to learn a new language
- c) Because Mr. Maged wants to show them their heritage
- d) Because they are going to move back to Egypt

2. How is the family traveling from Luxor to Aswan?

- a) By train
- b) By felucca
- c) By cruise
- d) By car

3. What is the family going to do in Alexandria?

- a) Explore ancient temples and learn about kings
- b) Swim in the sea and build sandcastles
- c) See the Pyramids and the Sphinx
- d) Ride a traditional boat on the Nile

Language In Use

Planned Future المستقبل المخطط له

● When to use it:

متي يستخدم:

- To talk about your **intentions** or **plans** for the future.

للتحدث عن النوايا و الخطط للمستقبل.

Affirmative Form: تكوين الإثبات:

Subject + am/is/are + going to + base verb

Examples:

- ▶ I am going to learn French next year.
- ▶ She is going to buy a new car.

Negative Form: تكوين النفي:

Subject + am/is/are (not) + going to + base verb

Examples:

- ▶ She isn't going to study Arabic tomorrow.
- ▶ They aren't going to meet their friends next Friday.

Question Form: تكوين السؤال:

Am/Is Are + subject + going to + base verb?

Examples:

- ▶ Is he going to play the match?
➡ (Yes, he is. \ No, he isn't.)
- ▶ Are they going to visit the Pyramids?
➡ (Yes, they are. \ No, they aren't.)
- ▶ What are you going to do? ➡ (I am going to study.)
- ▶ Where is he going to travel? ➡ (He's going to travel to Paris.)

Key Words

الكلمات الدالة

tomorrow

غداً

next (week - month - year)

(الأسبوع - الشهر - العام) القادم

soon

قريباً

in a few (minutes\hours\days)

(دقائق\ساعات\أيام) في بضع

in the future

في المستقبل

one day

يوماً ما

Choose the correct answer:

Student's
Book

1. I take my passport and ticket to the airport.
a) am going to b) is going to c) are going to d) going to
2. Nour pack her suitcase with clothes.
a) am going to b) is going to c) are going to d) going to
3. My friends stay in a hotel by the beach.
a) am going to b) is going to c) are going to d) going to
4. We wear our sunglasses at the beach.
a) am going to b) is going to c) are going to d) going to
5. Adam take pictures with his camera.
a) am going to b) is going to c) are going to d) going to

Exercises on Lesson 2

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (Vocabulary)

1. We traveled by a boat on the Nile to visit Aswan.
a) River b) Sea c) Land d) Bay
2. We visited Giza City to see the and ride a camel there.
a) square b) Pyramids c) crown d) palace
3. We went to Luxor to visit the Egyptian of Karnak.
a) beach b) island c) temple d) telephone

4. As Egyptians, our history makes us
 a) bored b) ugly c) sad d) special
5. We had an amazing on the river yesterday.
 a) cruise b) Nile c) hike d) slide
6. The sun is bright outside, you should wear your
 a) jacket b) sweater c) sunglasses d) shoes
7. I need to buy a new summer before the trip.
 a) homework b) degree c) number d) outfit
8. The Great Pyramids were built by the Egyptian
 a) doctors b) teachers c) pharaohs d) speakers
9. They packed their bags and started their to explore the forest.
 a) adventure b) nap c) board d) house
10. In summer, people like to wear outfits.
 a) light b) noisy c) busy d) crowded

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (Grammar)

1. What are you to visit tomorrow?
 a) go b) going c) went d) goes
2. We to swim in the sea this afternoon.
 a) are go b) going are c) going d) are going
3. She is going to a new car next month.
 a) bought b) buys c) buy d) buying
4. I going to get some bread from the bakery the next morning.
 a) is b) are c) am d) was
5. you going to spend the weekend in Egypt?
 a) Are b) Is c) Am d) Was
6. He to be a doctor when he grows up.
 a) are going b) is going c) going d) go

7. They are going to on a trip to Japan next month.
 a) going b) went c) goes d) go
8. What going to do after you finish the school?
 a) you are b) are you c) did you d) do you
9. I'm going to early tonight.
 a) sleeping b) slept c) sleep d) sleeps
10. My brother is going football next afternoon.
 a) play b) to play c) playing d) plays

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

powerful - Egyptians - Nile - temples - Sphinx

My family and I are going to travel to our home country. We're ①, but we moved abroad many years ago. We planned to visit the Pyramids and the ② Then, we're going to travel to Luxor to see the amazing ③ I'm excited to sail on a felucca boat at sunset along the ④ River.

4 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

1. packed - outfits - last - **They** - week - light.

▶

2. are - you - **Who** - going - visit - to?

▶ ?

3. open-air - **It** - an - museum - is - Egyptian.

▶

4. **We** - about - learned - our - kings - a lot.

▶

5. they - Aswan - go - **Are** - to - going to?

▶ ?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. What are you going to (visits) next week?
2. Mazen (be) going to play tennis tomorrow.
3. Sarah and Magy are (go) to study English together.
4. Salma (not be) going to call her friend tomorrow.
5. (he is) going to join the new team?
6. Karim is going to (answers) all your questions soon.
7. They (is going) to watch the new movie.
8. She is going to (packing) her suitcase tonight.

6 Read the text and answer the questions:

Last summer, our class went on a school trip to Egypt. First, we visited the Great Pyramids and saw the Sphinx. It was amazing! Our teacher told us stories about the pharaohs and their tombs. Then, we went south to Luxor and explored more temples. After that, we took a Nile cruise and enjoyed the beautiful river views. The trip was full of fun and learning. I loved seeing all the famous places in Egypt.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. First, we visited the Great Pyramids and saw the
 a) Nile b) Sphinx c) Luxor d) Cruise
2. After that, we took a and enjoyed the beautiful river views.
 a) train b) bus c) taxi d) Nile cruise

B Answer the following questions:

3. Where did the class go on their school trip last summer?



4. Who told the students stories about the pharaohs and their tombs?



5. Which city did they visit after the Great Pyramids?



7

Punctuate the following:

1. are you going to travel to Aswan in summer



2. we visited the Great pyramids yesterday.



3. is she going to Luxor next winter



4. he is going to study history in the university



8

Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

"Your Plan to Explore Egypt"



► The Pyramids - The Sphinx - Luxor

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Lesson 3

A Night under the Stars



Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية



campsite

مخيم / موقع التخييم



campfire

نار المخيم



hike

يمشي مسافة طويلة



trail

طريق / ممشي



desert

صحراء

Extra Vocabulary

الكلمات الإضافية

weekend	عطلة نهاية الأسبوع	camping	التخييم
lake	بحيرة	torch	كشاف
mountains	جبال	moments	لحظات
photos	صور	nature	طبيعة
tent	خيمة	Wadi El-Gemal Park	حديقة وادي الجمال

Adjectives

صفات

warm	دافئ	happy	سعيد
natural	طبيعي	clean	نظيف

Expressions and Prepositions

تعبيرات و حروف جر

go on a trip	يذهب في رحلة	set up a tent	ينصب خيمة
near mountains	بالقرب من الجبال	in the evening	في المساء
take photos	يلتقط صور	sit around	يجلس حول
look for	يبحث عن	school camping trip	رحلة تخييم مدرسية

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
camp	يُخيم	camped	camped
receive	يستقبل	received	received
arrive	يصل	arrived	arrived
hike	يمشي مسافة طويلة في الطبيعة	hiked	hiked
share	يشارك	shared	shared

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
set up	ينصب	set up	set up
sit	يجلس	sat	sat
teach	يُدرس	taught	taught
leave	يغادر	left	left
keep	يحافظ	kept	kept
think	يعتقد / يفكر	thought	thought

Read the story

Our School Camping Trip

رحلة التخييم المدرسية لدينا



Next weekend, our class is going to travel to the beautiful Wadi El Gemal Park for a school camping trip. We are going to pack our suitcases with **warm** clothes, a torch, and a water bottle. Our teacher told us those who want to go on the trip need to receive their bus tickets today. She said the **campsite** is going to be crowded because another school is visiting too.

في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع القادمة، سيذهب فصلنا في رحلة إلى حديقة وادي الجمال الجميلة في رحلة تخييم مدرسية. سنقوم بتجهيز حقائبنا بملابس دافئة، ومصباح يدوي، وزجاجة ماء. أخبرتنا معلمتنا أن الذين يريدون الذهاب في الرحلة يحتاجون إلى استلام تذاكر الحافلة اليوم. وقالت إن موقع التخييم سيكون مزدحمًا لأن مدرسة أخرى ستزور المكان أيضًا.

When we arrive, we are going to set up our tents near some amazing mountains. Our teacher is going to teach us about desert plants and animals. In the evening, we are going to sit around a **campfire** and tell stories. I am going to take lots of photos to share happy moments with my family. The next morning, we are going to **hike** on a nature **trail** and look for special birds. Before we leave, we are going to clean the campsite carefully to keep it clean. This is going to be my first camping trip, and I think it is going to be so much fun!

عندما نصل، سنقوم بنصب خيامنا بالقرب من بعض الجبال المذهلة. ستعلمنا معلمتنا عن نباتات وحيوانات الصحراء. في المساء، سنجلس حول نار المخيم ونحكي القصص. سألتقط الكثير من الصور لمشاركة اللحظات السعيدة مع عائلتي. في صباح اليوم التالي، سنقوم بالمشي في ممشى طبيعي ونبحث عن طيور مميزة. قبل أن نغادر، سنقوم بتنظيف المخيم بعناية للحفاظ عليه نظيفًا. ستكون هذه أول رحلة تخييم لي، وأعتقد أنها ستكون ممتعة للغاية!

Read and write T (True) or F (False):



Student's
Book

1. The class is going to travel to the beach for camping. (.....)
2. They need to receive their bus tickets for the trip. (.....)
3. Only their school is going to the campsite. (.....)
4. They are going to clean the campsite before leaving. (.....)

Word Building Skills

Adverbs:

الظُرُوف:

An adverb tells us how we do something. (It describes the verb)

يخبرنا الظرف كيف نفعل شيئاً ما. (يصف الفعل)

- We can make many adverbs by adding **-ly** to adjectives.

يمكننا تكوين العديد من الظروف عن طريق إضافة **-ly** إلى الصفات.

Examples:

▶ quick : quick**ly**

⇒ The cheetah **runs quickly**.

▶ loud : loud**ly**

⇒ The children **sing loudly**.

▶ happy : happ**ily**

⇒ She is singing **happily**.

- (y changes to i before **-ly**)

عند إضافة النهاية **-ly** إلى بعض الصفات التي تنتهي بحرف **y**، يتحول **y** إلى **i** قبل إضافة **-ly**.

⇒ The kid sings **happily**.

▶ careful : caref**ully**

⇒ She paints the picture **carefully**.

⇒ The ending **-ly** is usually pronounced /li/

النهاية **-ly** تُنطق عادةً /li/



Read each sentence. Circle the adverb:

1. The children laughed loudly at the funny story.
2. She walked quietly into the library.
3. Ali solved the puzzle quickly and smiled.
4. My brother plays football happily with his friends.
5. The artist painted the picture carefully.

Exercises on Lesson 3

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. People often sit around a at night to tell stories.
a) campfire b) volcano c) trail d) platform
2. We learnt about some plants like cactus.
a) dessert b) desolate c) desert d) damage
3. They can among mountains and enjoy the nature.
a) hold b) hike c) fight d) drink
4. We usually set our tent in a near the city.
a) seed b) campsite c) playground d) suitcase
5. He shouted in the class that's why he was punished.
a) loud b) quiet c) quietly d) loudly
6. He used a when he walked in the dark trail.
a) torch b) toaster c) bed d) table
7. She sings very
a) beautiful b) beautifully c) beauty d) beautify
8. He drives because the road is not safe.
a) careful b) careless c) care d) carefully
9. She whispered so the baby wouldn't wake up.
a) quietly b) quiet c) quieter d) quietness

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

fun - look - camping - mountains - clean

We are going to hike on a nature trail. My brother is going to ① for special birds. Before we leave, we are going to ② the campsite. This is going to be my first ③ trip. I can't wait to see the sunrise over the ④ and cook breakfast over the fire with my family. I think it is going to be so much fun!

3 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

1. weekend, - are - **Next** - going to - we - travel.

.....

2. campsite - going to - **Are** - clean - you - the?

..... ?

3. **We** - are - go - going to - a trip - on.

.....

4. campsite - **Is** - the - crowded - going to - be?

..... ?

5. **We** - around - the - sat - campfire - warm.

.....

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Our class is going to travel to the beautiful Wadi El Gemal Park for a school camping trip. We are going to pack our suitcases with warm clothes. Our teacher told us those who want to go on the trip, they need to receive their bus tickets today. She said the campsite is going to be crowded because another school is visiting too.

When we arrive, we are going to set up our tents near some amazing mountains. Our teacher is going to teach us about desert plants and animals.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. They are going to pack clothes for the trip.
 a) beautiful b) hot c) nice d) warm
2. They need to receive their bus today.
 a) tickets b) station c) seats d) rugs

B Answer the following questions:

3. Where are they going to travel next weekend?
 4. Why is the campsite going to be crowded?
 5. What is the teacher going to teach them?

5 Punctuate the following:

1. is she going to the campsite with us



2. rana received her bus ticket yesterday



3. are your parents going to travel with you



4. the teacher taught us about the Ancient Egyptian



- 6 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:**

"A School Trip to a Campsite"

► mountains - campfire - tents



Lessons 4-5

Writing Email Invitation
Project: Think and Create

Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية



email

بريد إلكتروني



invitation

دعوة



vehicle

مركبة



Egyptian food

أكل مصري

Extra Vocabulary

الكلمات الإضافية

Red Sea

البحر الأحمر

scenery

منظر طبيعي

fact

حقيقة

landmarks

معالم سياحية

activity

نشاط

Koshari

كشري

Expressions and Prepositions

تعابير وحروف جر

I hope you are doing well!

أتمنى أن تكون بخير!

I can't wait to see you!

لا أستطيع الانتظار لرؤيتك!

fun places

أماكن ممتعة

I promise you

أعدك

let me know

أخبرني / أعلمني

show you around

أرشدك / أريك المكان

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present

Past

PP

invite

يدعو

invited

invited

hope

يتمنى

hoped

hoped

Present		Past	PP
miss	يفتقد	missed	missed
try	يحاول	tried	tried
promise	يعد	promised	promised
carry	يحمل	carried	carried

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
write	يكتب	wrote	written
ride	يركب	rode	ridden
find	يجد	found	found



Think and answer:



Read the following informal email invitation:



From: Ramy

To: Max

Subject: Invitation to visit Egypt

Dear Max,

I hope you are doing well! I miss you so much. I want to invite you to visit **Egypt** this summer. It's an amazing country with lots of fun places to see! You must visit the **Great Pyramids of Giza**—they're so big and old! We can also ride a boat on the **Nile River** and see the beautiful **Red Sea**. Don't forget to try Egyptian food like **Koshari**. It's delicious! My family and I will show you around. I promise you'll have the best time! **Please let me know if you can come. I can't wait to see you!**

Your friend,

Ramy



Search

من: رامي
إلى: ماكس
الموضوع: دعوة لزيارة مصر

عزيزي ماكس،
أتمنى أن تكون بخير! أفتقدك كثيرًا. أريد أن أدعوك لزيارة مصر هذا الصيف. إنها دولة رائعة بها العديد من الأماكن الممتعة لرؤيتها!
يجب عليك زيارة الأهرامات الكبرى في الجيزة فهي كبيرة وقديمة جدًا! يمكننا أيضًا ركوب قارب في نهر النيل ورؤية البحر الأحمر الجميل. لا تنس تجربة الطعام المصري مثل "الكشري". إنه لذيذ!
عائتي وأنا سنقوم بإرشادك في المكان. أعدك بأنك ستحظى بأممتع الأوقات!
أرجو أن تخبرني إذا كان بإمكانك الحضور. لا أستطيع الانتظار لرؤيتك!
صديقك،
رامي



How to write an email invitation:

Guiding Writing Steps:

خطوات الكتابة الإرشادية:

- ① **Greeting:** Start with "Dear [Name]" and a friendly opening.
التحية: ابدأ بـ "عزيزي [الاسم]" وافتتاحية ودية.
- ② **Invitation:** Say, "I want to invite you to visit Egypt!".
الدعوة: قل: "أريد أن أدعوك لزيارة مصر!"
- ③ **Describe Places:** Pick 2–3 landmarks and write 1–2 sentences about each.
وصف الأماكن: اختر 2–3 معالم واكتب جملة أو جملتين عن كل منها.
- ④ **Closing:** End with "Please let me know if you can come. I can't wait to see you!" and sign your name.
الختام: أنهى بـ "من فضلك أخبرني إذا كان بإمكانك الحضور. لا أستطيع الانتظار لرؤيتك!" ووقع اسمك.



Write an email of about (30-40) words to your friend from America inviting him to visit Egypt:



Think and Create

Design your own "Travel Adventure Book"

صمّم كتابك الخاص بعنوان "مغامرة السفر"

"Travel Adventure Book"

Create a page for each type of travel:

أنشئ صفحة لكل نوع من أنواع السفر:

- ① Draw or find a picture of the vehicle (bus, train, plane, etc.).
ارسم أو ابحث عن صورة للمركبة (حافلة، قطار، طائرة، إلخ).
- ② Write the **name of the vehicle** and draw where it travels (e.g., a bus on a road, a plane in the sky, a boat on water).
اكتب اسم المركبة وارسم المكان الذي تسافر إليه (على سبيل المثال، حافلة على الطريق، طائرة في السماء، قارب في الماء).
- ③ Add a **"Ticket"** (draw one!) and write:
 - One **fact** about this type of travel (e.g., "A train can carry many people at once!").
حقيقة واحدة حول هذا النوع من السفر (على سبيل المثال، "يمكن للقطار أن يحمل العديد من الأشخاص في وقت واحد!").
 - One **sentence** about what you are going to do on this trip (e.g., "I am going to look out the window at the scenery!").
جملة واحدة حول ما ستفعله في هذه الرحلة (على سبيل المثال، "سأنظر من النافذة على المشهد!").

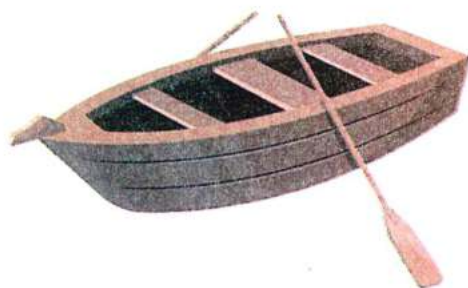


A page of my "Travel Adventure Book"

Vehicle: Boat

Ticket:

BOAT TICKET
RIVER :
CRUISE :



Fact:

Boats can float on water and take us to islands.

My Adventure Plan:

I am going to feel the wind in my hair and look for fish.

What I Will See:

I will see fish, waves, and maybe dolphins!

My Favorite Part:

Feeling the boat rock on the waves.

Now make your own "Travel Adventure Book"

Exercises on Lessons 4 & 5

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. My mom makes a cake; it's the best.
a) delicious b) crowded c) awful d) bad
2. Please send me a/an to know before you come.
a) block b) slide c) email d) yawn
3. I sent an for my birthday party to all my friends.
a) invitation b) camp c) collage d) word
4. What will we take to the desert: a car or a bus?
a) food b) party c) drink d) vehicle
5. The Pyramids and Sphinx are the most famous in Egypt.
a) factories b) houses c) landmarks d) beaches
6. I you to finish the project very soon.
a) catch b) skip c) delete d) promise

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

koshari - eat - Egyptian - email - delicious

Last summer, I visited Egypt with my family. I tried many types of
 ① food. I loved the traditional dish called ② It
 was so ③, with rice, pasta, lentils, and a tasty tomato sauce.
 I also tried other local foods, and every meal was very good. Egyptian food
 is special and I will ④ it every time.

3 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

1. you - I - doing - hope - well - are!

▶

2. the - place - It - best - ever - is!

▶

3. you - Are - going - Adam - invite - to?

..... ?

4. city - Is - your - and - quiet - peaceful?

..... ?

5. took - photos - trip - I - a lot - last.

.....

4

Read the text and answer the questions:

Dear Max,

I hope you are doing well! I miss you so much. I want to invite you to visit Egypt this summer. It's an amazing country with lots of fun places to see! You must visit the Great Pyramids of Giza - they're so big and old! We can also ride a boat on the Nile River and see the beautiful Red Sea. Don't forget to try Egyptian food like *koshari*. It's delicious! My family and I will show you around. I promise you'll have the best time!

Please let me know if you can come. I can't wait to see you!

Your friend,

Asser

A

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Egypt is an country.

a) amazing

b) hot

c) sad

d) healthy

2. The Egyptian food is like *koshari*.

a) awful

b) delicious

c) salty

d) bad

B

Answer the following questions:

3. Who did Ali invite to visit Egypt?

.....

4. Describe the fun places in Egypt.

.....

5. What did Ali promise his friend?

▶

5 Punctuate the following:

1. how are you going to travel to Luxor

▶

2. i am going to have a picnic with my family

▶

3. my dad promised me to go out together

▶

4. did you enjoy the Egyptian food

▶

6 Write a fiction story of (40) words using the words below:

"Your Adventure Trip"

▶ last year - best time - landmarks

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Review on Unit 3

Main Vocabulary

suitcase	حقبة السفر	pack	يحزم أمتعته
travel	يسافر	crowded	مزدحم
beach	شاطئ	ticket	تذكرة
the Pyramids	الأهرامات	Egyptian temple	معبد مصري
boat	مركب	the Sphinx	أبو الهول
campsite	مخيم	park	متنزه
hike	يمشي في الطبيعة	trail	طريق\ ممشي
desert	صحراء	email	بريد إلكتروني
invitation	دعوة	vehicle	مركبة

Language Notes



Planned Future

- **Use:** We use "going to" when we talk about something we plan to do in the future.

Example:

▶ I am **going to** study tomorrow.

- **Affirmative:**

Subject + am/is/are + going to + base verb

Example:

▶ He is **going to** play football next morning.

- **Negative:**

Subject + am/is/are (not) + going to + base verb

Example:

▶ They are not going to come tonight.

- **WH-questions:**

Q.W + am/is/are + Subject + going to + base verb?

Example:

▶ What are you **going to** do tomorrow?

- **Yes/No questions:**

Am/Is/Are + Subject + going to + base verb?

Example:

▶ Are you going to visit Egypt?

➔ Yes, I am. ➔ No, I am not.

Pronunciation

- **Adverbs:** الطُرُوف

An adverb tells us how we do something. (It describes the verb)

- We can make many adverbs by adding **-ly** to adjectives.

▶ quick : **quickly** ➔ The cheetah runs **quickly**.

Dictation:

crowded	قلاع من الرمال
travel	حزم الأمتعة
pack	عطلة
suitcase	مكتبة
citadel	واقى الشمس
ticket	ملابس / طقم
beach	مقبرة
Egyptian temple	إرث
Bibliotheca Alexandrina	مغامرة
museum	فراغة
cruise	جزيرة
the Sphinx	جبال
campsite	خيمة
campfire	البحر الأحمر
hike	نشاط
trail	التخييم
desert	كشاف
invitation	طبيعة
email	منظر طبيعي
vehicle	معالم سياحية

Writing Samples

"My last summer vacation"

Life in the Nile is full of beauty and life. Many fish, birds, and animals depend on it. People use its water for farming, fishing, and transport. It is Egypt's source of water which also provides food and work.

"Your adventure trip"

My trip started where the old trail ends. It was very cold last month. I hiked between the trees. I saw wonderful landmarks. Our guide and gave us some information about this old forest. It was the best time there.

"Your plan to explore Egypt"

I'm going to visit the Pyramids of Giza. I am going to ride a camel. my friend and I are going to take a boat on the Nile River. Finally, we are going to travel to Luxor see the temples.

"A School Trip to Remember"

Last week, our class went on a school trip to a campsite. We wore warm clothes and helped our teacher set up a tent. In the evening, we sat around a campfire and told fun stories. It was an exciting trip, and we all enjoyed our time together.

"A school trip to a campsite"

We are going to go to the campsite. We're going to set up the tents. In the morning, we're going to watch the sunrise over the mountains. It's going to be my first time camping, and I am very excited.

"A Family Travel Story"

Last year, I went on an adventure trip with my family. We visited famous landmarks and explored new places every day. We laughed, learned, and took many photos. It was the best time of my life and I felt happy.

Test 5 on Unit 3

(خاص بالأزهر الشريف)

Total

40

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب.



1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

(6Ms)

1. Mr. Maged and his family are going travel to (London - Egypt - Italy).
2. They packed (heavy - black - light) outfits for the hot weather.
3. They are excited to see (people - tombs - doors) of ancient kings.

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box: (4Ms)

pack - travel - suitcase - light

Nour : Rana, I'm so happy — we're finally going to ① to Cairo tomorrow!

Rana : That's great! Did you ② your clothes?

Nour : Not yet. I need to add some ③ clothes. What about you?

Rana : I packed my ④ last night.

3 Choose the correct answer:

(4Ms)

1. People often sit around a at night to tell stories.
a) campfire b) volcano c) trail d) tombs
2. Sally is going to tomorrow.
a) travelling b) travels c) travel d) travelled
3. Ahmed is going to his homework tonight.
a) doing b) does c) did d) do
4. She drives the car
a) careful b) carefully c) calm d) quiet

4

Read and correct the underlined mistakes:

(8Ms)

1. They is going to spend their vacation in the park. (.....)
2. My friend sings nice. (.....)
3. Mariam is going playing the piano tomorrow. (.....)
4. They watch the movie happy. (.....)

5

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

(10Ms)

I'm going to invite my friend Adham to visit Egypt. It's an amazing country with lots of fun places! I'm going to show him the Great Pyramids of Giza, they're so big and old! We can also ride a boat on the Nile River and see the beautiful Red Sea. I'll make him try the Egyptian food like koshari. It's delicious! I can't wait to see him again!

A

Read and write T(True) or F(False):

1. Egypt is an amazing country with lots of fun places! (.....)
2. He is going to invite his grandfather. (.....)

B

Choose the correct answer:

3. He is going to visit the Great Pyramids of (Giza - Luxor - Aswan - Alexandria).
4. They can ride a (bike - car - scooter - boat) on the Nile river.
5. Koshari is (bad - delicious - salty - spicy)!

6

Write a short paragraph of (4) sentences using the following guiding words:

(8Ms)

"A School Trip to Remember"

► campfire - warm - clothes - tent

.....

.....

.....

Test 6 on Unit 3

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب.

Total

30

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:



(2Ms)

1. Next weekend, our class is going to travel to Luxor. (.....)
2. It's a school camping trip. (.....)
3. They need to receive their bus tickets today. (.....)
4. The campsite isn't going to be crowded. (.....)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

(2Ms)

1. We went to Luxor to visit the Egyptian of Luxor.
 a) beach b) island c) temple d) television
2. They can among mountains and enjoy the nature.
 a) hold b) hike c) fight d) drink
3. What you going to do after you finish the school?
 a) you are b) are you c) did you d) do you
4. How much money going to spend on the trip?
 a) is b) are c) did d) do

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (2Ms)

campfire - campsite - trail - fun - hike

Yesterday was a wonderful weekend. We found the perfect ① near a small forest. The next day, we decided to ② on a nearby ③ that led up a mountain. It was a long walk, but the view from the top was worth it! That evening, we sat around a ④ roasting marshmallows and telling stories

Term 2

4

Read the text and answer the questions:

(7Ms)

I planned to explore Egypt. First, I will fly to Cairo to see the Cairo Tower. Next, I will take an overnight train to Luxor where I will explore the wonderful Karnak Temple, and the ancient tombs in the Valley of the Kings. A relaxing Nile cruise will then carry me to Aswan where I'll ride a felucca at sunset. Finally, I'll relax in Hurghada by the Red Sea. I'm going to swim in its clear blue waters. This trip will be the journey of a lifetime.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or ,d:

1. First, the speaker will fly to to see the Cairo Tower.

- a) Luxor b) Hurghada c) Aswan d) Cairo

2. In Aswan, the speaker will relax by riding a

- a) felucca b) camel c) horse d) bike

B Answer the following question:

3. What will the speaker do in Luxor?

.....

4. How will he go to Aswan?

.....

5. Summarize the text in one sentence.

.....

5

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (4Ms)

1. Zain is going (reading) the new book tomorrow.

2. What (they are) going to do in summer vacation?

6

Put the words in the correct order to form sentences: (2Ms)

1. We - travel - Alexandria - going to - are - to.

.....

2. campsite - is - the - crowded - going to - be?

▶ ?

7 Punctuate the following:

(4Ms)

1. are you going to sleep early tonight

▶

2. her voice is very loud and noise

▶

8 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below: (7Ms)

"A Family Travel Story"

▶ last year - landmarks - best time

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test 7 based on units 1 - 2 - 3

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب.



1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

(6Ms)

1. Ali loves hobbies that make his free time (boring - special - busy).
2. Playing board games and puzzles helps Ali (sleep - run - think) better.
3. When Ali cycles or skates, he feels (strong - tired - angry) and happy.

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box: (4Ms)

medicine - stomach - serious - examination

Doctor: Hello, Amal. What's the problem?

Amal : Hello Doctor. My ① hurts and I feel tired.

Doctor: Please come to the ② room.

Amal : Is it ③ , Doctor?

Doctor: Don't worry. It's not serious. You should rest, take your ④ , and drink warm drinks.

Amal : Thank you, Doctor.

3 Choose the correct answer:

(4Ms)

1. Good (leadership - friendship - enjoyment) is important for a team to succeed.
2. My friend likes (reading - painting - cycling) in the park, but he wears a helmet for safety.
3. I (are - am - is) going to visit the beach next holiday.
4. Students (must - mustn't - don't have to) wash their hands before lunch.

4 Read and correct the underlined mistakes:

(8Ms)

1. He can't come to the party yesterday because he was sick. (.....)
2. You must eat too much chocolate to be healthy. (.....)
3. Noura is going to packs her suitcase. (.....)
4. Kareem paints the picture careful. (.....)

5 Read the following passage, then answer the questions: (10Ms)

Mona and Salma are excited because they are going to travel to Alexandria tomorrow. Mona plans to pack her suitcase tonight with summer clothes and her swimsuit. Her mother has already bought the bus tickets. The bus is going to be crowded during the summer holiday. They are going to visit the beach, swim happily, take photos, enjoy the sun, and eat ice cream together.

A Read and write T(True) or F(False):

1. Mona and Salma are going to travel to Alexandria tomorrow. (.....)
2. The bus is going to be empty during the summer holiday. (.....)

B Choose the correct answer:

3. Mona plans to pack her suitcase tonight with summer clothes and her (swimsuit - shoes - hat).
4. Her mother has already bought the bus (maps - pillows - tickets).
5. They are going to visit the beach, swim, and (eat ice cream - study - work) together.

6 Write a short email of (4) sentences using the following guiding words: (8Ms)

Write an email to your friend, Hala. Tell her about your favorite hobby. What is it? When and where do you enjoy doing it? Your email address is samar@yahoo.com, and your friend's email address is hala@gmail.com.

From	:	
To	:	
Subject	:	
.....		
.....		
.....		

Test 8 based on units 1 - 2 - 3

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب.



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

(2Ms)

1. Maya is excited about the Hobby Talent Show class next month. (.....)
2. Maya does not like drawing or painting. (.....)
3. On weekends, Maya enjoys cycling and skating in the park. (.....)
4. She hopes everyone will enjoy learning about each other's hobbies. (.....)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

(2Ms)

1. You can get your medicine from the
 a) school b) restaurant c) pharmacy d) park
2. We set up our near the lake for the night.
 a) temple b) hotel c) house d) tent
3. When she was four, she couldn't read stories, but now she
 a) could b) can c) couldn't d) can't
4. They study hard to pass the exam.
 a) have to b) don't have to c) has to d) doesn't have to

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (2Ms)

plants - torch - tents - camping trip - crowded

My name is Amina. Next Friday, our class is going to travel to Wadi El Gemal Park for a school ① We will pack our suitcases with warm clothes, a ②, and water. The campsite will be ③ because another school is visiting too. At the park, we will set up ④ near the mountains and learn about desert plants.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: (7Ms)

Ali felt very tired and weak one morning. His mother noticed he didn't look well. Ali said he had a headache, a cough, and a sore throat. They went to the clinic. The nurse asked him to come to the examination room. The doctor checked him and said he had a mild fever and stomach pain. Ali needed to rest, drink warm liquids, and take his medicine. No ice cream for a few days! Ali promised to follow the doctor's advice and hoped he would feel better soon.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Ali went to the clinic because he felt
a) happy b) tired c) hungry d) excited
2. The doctor told Ali to rest, drink warm liquids, and take his
a) medicine b) toy c) book d) pencil

B Answer the following question:

3. What is wrong with Ali?

▶

4. What did Ali promise to do?

▶

5. Summarize the text in one sentence.

▶

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (4Ms)

1. Is she (goes to) wear sunglasses?
2. You (must) stay up late when you're sick.

6 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences: (2Ms)

1. room - nurse's - the - in - a first aid - kit - **There's**.

▶

2. hobbies - perform - **Where** - you - do - your - usually?

▶?

7 Punctuate the following: (4Ms)

1. the seat is so soft and comfortable

▶

2. Where did Sara and maya paint together

▶

8 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below: (7Ms)

"Your trip to Alexandria"

▶ **suitcase - tickets - beach**

.....

.....

.....

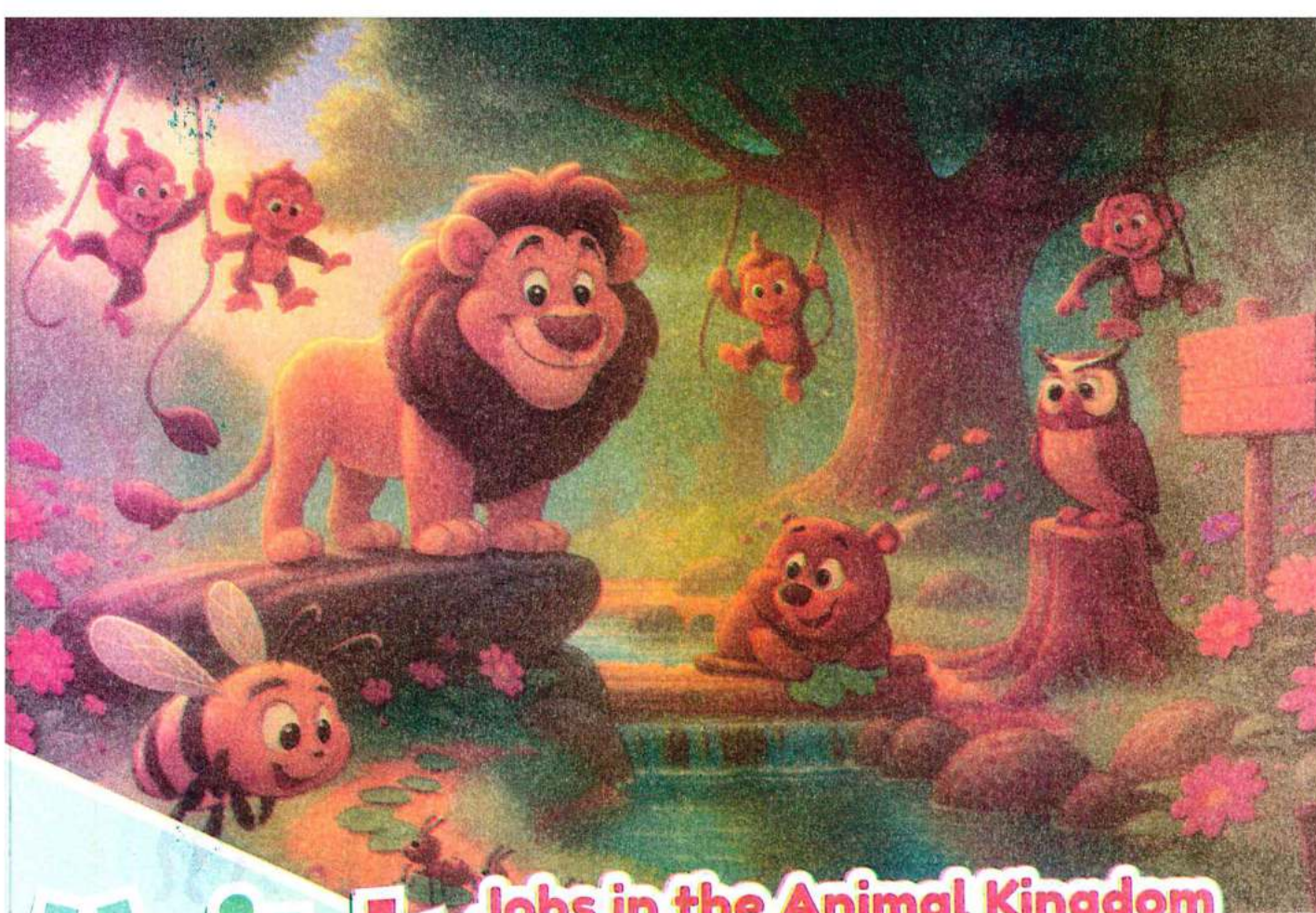
.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Unit 4 Jobs in the Animal Kingdom

وظائف في مملكة الحيوان

Learning Outcomes



Speaking

- Describe animal jobs using simple sentences
- Take turns asking and answering questions about animal
- Express opinions on appreciating and protecting animal helpers



Listening

- Recognize key words about animal helpers
- Identify the gist in short dialogs about animals and their jobs
- Identify specific details in short dialogs about animals and their jobs



Reading

- Identify the main idea of a text about animal jobs
- Identify specific details of short informational texts about animal jobs
- Guess the meaning of unknown words based on context
- Use the Present Simple and Present Continuous accurately



Writing

- Write short descriptive paragraph about animal helpers using unit vocabulary
- Use Present Simple to describe habits and jobs
- Use Present Continuous for actions happening now
- Design a poster showing how to appreciate and protect animal helpers

Lesson 1

How Animals Help Us



Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية



police dogs

كلاب بوليسية



guide dogs

كلاب إرشاد



dolphins

دلافين



horses

أحصنة / خيول



officers

ضباط



criminals

مجرمون

Extra Vocabulary

الكلمات الإضافية

kind

نوع

danger

خطر

streets

شوارع

blind people

مكفوفون

forest

غابة

safely

بأمان

others

آخريين

around

حول

bark

نباح - ينبح

especially

خاصة

rescue

إنقاذ - ينقذ

countries

دُول

Adjectives

صفات

brave	شجاع	smart	ذكي
sharp	حاد	blind	كفيف
loud	عالٍ	shy	خجول
calm	هادئ	careful	حريص
scared	خائف	real	حقيقي
lost	مفقود	playful	كثير اللعب - مُحب للعب
nervous	عصبي	upset	منزعج

Expressions and Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر

Really?	حقاً؟	That's amazing!	إنه مذهش!
from far away	من بعيد	without getting hurt	دون التعرض للأذى
in danger	في خطر	spend time with	يقضي الوقت مع
What kind of jobs?	أي نوع من الوظائف؟	in the water	في الماء
lost items	الأشياء المفقودة	move around	يتجول

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
cross	يعبر	crossed	crossed
move	يتحرك	moved	moved
rescue	ينقذ	rescued	rescued
walk	يمشي	walked	walked

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
know	يعرف	knew	known
find	يجد	found	found
catch	يمسك	caught	caught
feel	يشعر	felt	felt
spend	يقضي	spent	spent
show	يعرض	showed	shown
hurt	يجرح	hurt	hurt

Listen and read



Teacher : Did you know that some animals have real jobs, just like people do?

المُعلِّمة: هل تعلم أن بعض الحيوانات لها وظائف حقيقية، تمامًا كما يفعل البشر؟

Student : Really? What kind of jobs do they do?

الطالب : حقا؟ ما نوع الوظائف التي يقومون بها؟

Teacher : Well, **police dogs** are very brave and smart. They help officers find lost people and catch **criminals**, using their strong noses to smell things from far away.

المُعلِّمة : حسنًا، الكلاب البوليسية شجاعة وذكية جدًا. إنهم يساعدون الضباط في العثور على الأشخاص المفقودين والقبض على المجرمين، باستخدام أنوفهم القوية لشم الأشياء من مسافة بعيدة.

Student : That's amazing! Do other dogs have jobs too?

الطالب : هذا مذهل! هل الكلاب الأخرى لديها وظائف أيضًا؟



Teacher : Yes, some **guide dogs** are for blind people. They help them walk safely, cross streets, and move around without getting hurt. They are very calm and careful.

المُعلِّمة : نعم، بعض كلاب الإرشاد مخصصة للمكفوفين. يساعدونهم على المشي بأمان، وعبور الشوارع، والتحرك دون أن يتعرضوا للأذى. إنهم هادئون وحذرون للغاية.

Student : What about other animals?

الطالب : ماذا عن الحيوانات الأخرى؟

Teacher : Horses help people feel calm and happy. Spending time with them can make someone who is sad or scared feel much better.

المُعلِّمة : الخيول تساعد الناس على الشعور بالهدوء والسعادة. إن قضاء الوقت معهم يمكن أن يجعل الشخص الحزين أو الخائف يشعر بتحسن كبير.

Student : Are there any animals that help in the water?

الطالب : هل هناك أي حيوانات تساعد في الماء؟

Teacher : Yes, in some countries, rescue dolphins help people who are in danger in the sea. These animals show us that helping others is a very special job.

المُعلِّمة : نعم، في بعض البلدان، الدلافين المنقذة تساعد الأشخاص المعرضين للخطر في البحر. تُظهر لنا هذه الحيوانات أن مساعدة الآخرين وظيفة خاصة جدًا.

Fill in the blanks:



1. Brave, smart animals that help police find lost people and catch criminals using their strong sense of smell. (.....)
2. Rescue animals that help people who are in danger in the sea. (.....)
3. Animals that help people feel calm and happy, especially when they are sad or scared. (.....)
4. Calm, careful animals that help blind people walk safely, cross streets, and move around without getting hurt. (.....)



Choose the correct answer:

1. What special ability do police dogs use to help officers?
 - a) Their sharp eyes
 - b) Their strong noses
 - c) Their fast running
 - d) Their loud barks
2. How do guide dogs help blind people?
 - a) They find lost items
 - b) They cook meals
 - c) They help them walk and cross streets safely
 - d) They read books to them
3. What do horses help people feel?
 - a) Angry and upset
 - b) Excited and nervous
 - c) Tired and sleepy
 - d) Calm and happy
4. Where do rescue dolphins help people?
 - a) In the mountain
 - b) In the desert
 - c) In the sea
 - d) In the forest
5. Which quality do guide dogs have?
 - a) They are calm and careful
 - b) They are loud and playful
 - c) They are lazy and slow
 - d) They are shy and quiet

Exercises on Lesson 1

1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Some dogs help blind people walk safely.
 - a) puppy
 - b) guide
 - c) playful
 - d) strange
2. Rescue help people who are in danger in the water.
 - a) horses
 - b) dogs
 - c) dolphins
 - d) cats
3. The police catch to keep the city safe.
 - a) teachers
 - b) criminals
 - c) doctors
 - d) dogs
4. keep people safe in their countries.
 - a) Criminals
 - b) Officers
 - c) Thieves
 - d) Killers

5. dogs always find bad people.
 a) Police b) Fighter c) Coward d) Lazy
6. When I ride a, I feel very relaxed and calm.
 a) fox b) tiger c) horse d) lion
7. I went with my children to see the show of in the sea.
 a) dogs b) cats c) rats d) dolphins
8. He must be to go into the dark forest. He is never scared.
 a) brave b) sorry c) happy d) sad
9. Be when you cross the street.
 a) famous b) noisy c) careful d) nervous
10. Police officers help us find our items.
 a) wrong b) lost c) famous d) dead

2

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

smell - dogs - officers - dolphins - safe

Animals can have important jobs. Police ① are very brave and smart. They help ② find lost people and catch criminals. Using their strong noses, they can ③ things from far away. These dogs work hard every day to keep everyone ④ Officers depend on them because their amazing sense of smell makes them very helpful.

3

Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

1. of - What - do - jobs - kind - animals - do?

.....?

2. dogs - are - Police - brave - and - smart.

.....

3. dogs - other - have - Do - ,too - jobs?

.....?

4. people - Horses - calm - help - happy - feel - and.



5. dolphins - are - people - Do - who - help - in danger?



4

Read the text and answer the questions:

Many animals have important jobs that help people. For example, police dogs work with officers to find lost people and catch criminals. Another helpful animal is the guide dog, which carefully helps blind people walk safely and cross streets without getting hurt. Horses also have jobs, some horses help people feel calm. Even dolphins can have jobs! In some places, rescue dolphins help save people who are in danger at sea. These animals show us that helping others is a very special job.

A

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Horses help people to feel

a) bad

b) calm

c) noisy

d) cruel

2. Police dogs work with officers to find people.

a) talented

b) brave

c) lost

d) poor

B

Answer the following questions:

3. What is the importance of guide dogs?



4. What do these animals show us?



5. Summarize the text in one sentence.



5 Punctuate the following:

1. did you know animals' real jobs



2. they are very calm and careful



3. my grandma is cooking now pizza



4. do you like animals, Mr. Ahmed



6 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

"Animals' Jobs"

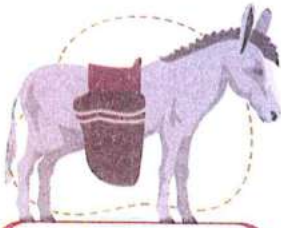
► police dogs - dolphins - blind people

Handwriting practice area with 10 horizontal lines for writing a paragraph.



Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية



donkey

حمار



pigeon

حمامة



falcon

مقر



gecko

سحلية الوزغة / بُرّص



water buffalo

جاموس الماء



scarab beetle

خنفساء الجعران



ploughs

محاريث

Extra Vocabulary

الكلمات الإضافية

lizard

سحلية

helpers

مساعدين

insects

حشرات

Earth

الأرض

farm

مزرعة

fields

حقول

pests

آفات

loads

أحمال

soil

تربة

crops

محاصيل

routes

طرق

villages

قرى

markets

أسواق

containers

حاويات

fertilizer

سماد

baskets

سلال

messengers

مُرَاسِلون

dates

بلح

Adjectives

صفات

useless	غير مفيد	hardworking	مُجتهد
useful	مفيد	active	نشط
daily	يومي	narrow	ضيق
ripe	ناضج	heavy	ثقيل

Expressions and Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر

work together	يعملون معًا	on farm	في المزرعة
through the fields	خلال الحقول	break down	يتحلل
fly over a field	تحلق فوق الحقول	special roles	أدوار خاصة
help each other	يساعدون بعضهم بعضًا	in their daily lives	في حياتهم اليومية
at this moment	في هذه اللحظة	work with	يعمل مع

Definitions

تعريفات

falcon	a fast bird that hunts pests in fields
scarab beetle	an insect that helps make soil better for plants
donkey	a hardworking animal that carries heavy loads
gecko	a small lizard that eats insects inside houses
pigeon	a bird that can find its way home from far away
water buffalo	a strong animal that pulls ploughs on farms

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
pull	يسحب	pulled	pulled
hunt	يصطاد	hunted	hunted
carry	يحمل	carried	carried
prepare	يُحضر	prepared	prepared
plough	يحرث	ploughed	ploughed
transport	ينقل	transported	transported
damage	يحطم	damaged	damaged
climb	يقفز	climbed	climbed

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
grow	ينمو	grew	grown
make	يصنع	made	made
break down	يتحلل (مواد عضوية)	broke down	broken down
fly	يطير	flew	flown

Read and learn



Animal Helpers الحيوانات المساعدة

In Egypt, many animals work hard to help people in their daily lives. On farms, strong **water buffaloes** pull ploughs through the fields. Right now, a farmer is working with his **water buffalo** to prepare the soil for planting **crops**.



في مصر، تعمل العديد من الحيوانات بجد لمساعدة الناس في حياتهم اليومية. في المزارع، تسحب جاموس الماء القوي المحارث عبر الحقول. الآن، يعمل أحد المزارعين مع جاموس الماء الخاص به لتجهيز التربة لزراعة المحاصيل.

Donkeys carry heavy **loads** through villages and to markets. They transport crops, water **containers**, and supplies through narrow streets. At this moment, a donkey is probably walking to the market with baskets full of **ripe** dates. The donkeys know their **routes** very well.

تحمّل الحمير الأحمال الثقيلة عبر القرى والأسواق. ينقلون المحاصيل وحاويات المياه والإمدادات عبر الشوارع الضيقة. في هذه اللحظة، ربما يسير حمار إلى السوق بسلال مليئة بالتمر الناضج. تعرف الحمير طرقها جيدًا.

Pigeons have an important job as messengers. They carry notes and letters between different places.

للحمام وظيفة مهمة كحامل للرسائل. فهم يحملون ملاحظات ورسائل بين أماكن مختلفة.

Falcons help farmers by hunting small animals that damage crops. You might see a falcon flying over a field, looking for rats to catch. These birds fly high in the sky. In homes, geckos climb on walls and eat insects. They are most active during the evening.

تساعد الصقور المزارعين من خلال صيد الحيوانات الصغيرة التي تلحق الضرر بالمحاصيل. ربما ترى صقرًا يطير فوق الحقل بحثًا عن الفئران لاصطيادها. هذه الطيور تطير عاليًا في السماء. في المنازل، تتسلق الوزغات (الأبراص) الجدران وتأكل الحشرات. إنهم أكثر نشاطًا خلال المساء.

Scarab beetles work in the soil. They break down waste and help make the earth better for growing plants. All these animals - water buffaloes, donkeys, pigeons, falcons, geckos, and scarab beetles - play special roles in our life. They show how people and animals can work together and help each other in many useful ways.

تعمل خنافس الجعران في التربة. فهم يقومون بتحليل النفايات ويساعدون في تحسين التربة لزراعة النباتات. كل هذه الحيوانات - جاموس الماء و الحمير والحمام والصقور والوزغات وخنافس الجعران - تلعب أدوارًا خاصة في حياتنا. وهي تُظهر كيف يمكن للناس والحيوانات أن يعملوا معًا ويساعدون بعضهم البعض بطرق مفيدة عديدة.

Choose the correct answer:



1. What is the main job of water buffaloes?
a) They carry messages. b) They pull ploughs.
c) They hunt insects. d) They create fertilizer.
2. What do pigeons help people do?
a) carry messages b) transport heavy loads
c) prepare soil d) hunt insects
3. How do geckos help people?
a) They pull carts. b) They eat insects.
c) They carry messages. d) They break down waste

Answer the following questions:



1. If all the falcons disappeared, what problem would a farmer have?
▶
2. Why is a water buffalo so important for a farmer before any plants can start to grow?
▶

Language In Use



Present Simple vs. Present Continuous

Present Simple Tense:

● When to use it:

متي يُستخدم:

● We use the present simple to talk about things in general.

نستخدم المضارع البسيط للحديث عن الأشياء بشكل عام.

● Things in general can be:

الأشياء بشكل عام يمكن أن تكون:

1. Facts → Lions eat meat.

(حقيقة) الأسود تأكل اللحم.

2. Habits - repeated actions → I play every day.

(عادة - شيء متكرر الحدوث) أَلعب كل يوم.

3. Likes → I like cake.

(ما تحب) أحب الكيك.

4. Jobs → My father teaches English.

(الوظائف) أبي يُدرّس الإنجليزية.

Affirmative Sentences: الجمل المثبتة:

I / We / You / They (plural noun) + (base form)

He / She / It / (singular noun) + verb + s / es / ies

Examples:

▶ I **work** on a farm.

▶ A falcon **hunts** small animals.

Spelling rules with (He-She-It): قواعد كتابة الفعل مع (He - She - It)

● أضف "es" عندما ينتهي الفعل بأحد الحروف التالية (s - sh - ch - o - x).

Examples:

▶ He **passes** ▶ He **washes** ▶ She **watches** ▶ It **goes** ▶ He **fixes**

● عندما ينتهي الفعل بحرف ساكن متبوعًا بالحرف "y"، فإن النهاية "y" تتحول إلى "ies".

Examples:

▶ She **studies** ▶ He **tries**

Negative Form: تكوين النفي:

I / We / You / They + don't + base form.

He / She / It + doesn't + base form.

Examples:

▶ Falcons **don't hunt** at night.

▶ A lion **doesn't eat** fruits.

Question Form: تكوين السؤال:

Do + I / we / you / they + base form?

Does + he / she / it + base form?

Examples:

- ▶ **A:** Do farmers **use** donkeys for transport? **B:** Yes, they do.
 ▶ **A:** Does Ali **like** animals? **B:** No, he doesn't.
 ▶ **A:** What does a donkey **do**? **B:** It carries loads.

Present Continuous Tense:

● When to use it:

متي يُستخدم:

- We use the **present continuous tense** to talk about actions **happening now**.

نستخدم زمن المضارع المستمر للحديث عن الأفعال التي تحدث الآن (وقت الكلام).

Affirmative Form:

تكوين الإثبات:

[Subject] + [am / is / are] + [verb + -ing]

Examples:

- ▶ I **am studying** now. ▶ Look! She **is working**.
 ▶ Listen! They **are singing**. ▶ It's **raining** heavily today.

"-ing" Spelling rules

قواعد كتابة الفعل مع (-ing)

- احذف حرف "e" الأخير قبل إضافة "-ing".

Example: ▶ bake ➔ baking

- ضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير إذا سبقه متحرك (الأفعال ذات المقطع الواحد).

Example: ▶ run ➔ running

- غيّر "ie" إلى "y" قبل إضافة "-ing".

Example: ▶ tie ➔ tying

Negative Form:

تكوين النفي:

- For negative, use "not" after the verb "be".

Examples:

- ▶ She **is not** working. ▶ They **are not** playing.

Question Form:

تكوين السؤال:

[Am/Is/Are] + [subject] + [verb + -ing]?

Examples:

- | | |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| ▶ Am I studying? | ➔ Yes, you are. \ No, you aren't. |
| ▶ Is she working? | ➔ Yes, she is. \ No, she isn't. |
| ▶ Are they playing football? | ➔ Yes, they are. \ No, they aren't. |
| ▶ What is the donkey carrying? | ➔ It's carrying crops . |

Choose the correct answer:



Student's Book

1. Water buffaloes (**pull / are pulling**) ploughs on Egyptian farms.
2. Look! The pigeon (**carries / is carrying**) a message right now.
3. Geckos (**eat / are eating**) insects in homes.
4. Right now, the scarab beetle (**works / is working**) in the soil.

Exercises on Lesson 2

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (Vocabulary)

1. The farmer uses his to plough the fields every morning.
a) water buffalo b) beetle c) camel d) lion
2. The carried heavy baskets of vegetables to the market.
a) gecko b) tiger c) donkey d) leopard
3. A delivered a small message tied to its leg.
a) beetle b) pigeon c) pest d) fly
4. The flies high to look for its prey.
a) buffalo b) falcon c) elephant d) cat
5. A is a small insect that helps the soil.
a) rat b) buffalo c) scarab beetle d) cow
6. Farmers use a to prepare the land for planting.
a) knife b) plough c) house d) barn

7. I filled the to let the animals drink.
 a) chair b) book c) water container d) pen
8. On Fridays, they sell their fresh vegetables to the local
 a) home b) country c) magnet d) market
9. After months of care, the farmer collected the healthy
 a) crops b) drink c) snack d) meal
10. The truck can heavy boxes easily.
 a) sleep b) water c) load d) eat

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (Grammar)

1. Adam football in the club every Friday.
 a) play b) plays c) played d) playing
2. We are our English project.
 a) do b) does c) done d) doing
3. She like soda because it's unhealthy.
 a) don't b) doesn't c) isn't d) aren't
4. I dinner with my family right now.
 a) is eating b) am eating c) eat d) eats
5. Her parents as teachers.
 a) working b) works c) worked d) work
6. Look! She about her family.
 a) write b) writes c) is writing d) are writing
7. A: you usually read stories? B: Yes, I do.
 a) Do b) Does c) Are d) Am
8. Ali always English on Saturdays.
 a) study b) studied c) studies d) studying
9. We to the tennis court now.
 a) is going b) went c) go d) are going
10. I not eating at the moment.
 a) am b) did c) are d) was

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

soil - falcon - donkey - pests - water buffalo

Farms are full of amazing animals that help people every day. The ① walks slowly through the farm, carrying baskets of vegetables. The strong ② pulls the plough, helping the farmers prepare the ③ In the sky, a ④ searches for prey, keeping the farm safe. Together, these animals make farm life easier and happier.

4 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

1. carry - loads - Donkeys - heavy - through - villages.

▶

2. scarab beetles - Do - help - good - in - creating - soil?

▶ ?

3. is - gecko - climbing - now - the - on - wall - The.

▶

4. messengers - have - Pigeons - job as - an - important.

▶

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. Who are you (meet) now?

2. It (not raining) at the moment.

3. Elephants (eats) leaves and grass.

4. Look! He (work) on a project.

5. My grandpa (read) the newspaper right now.

6. David's father (be) a doctor.

7. Asser and Yassin (not play) football every day.

8. My friend (live) in Japan.

6

Read the text and answer the questions:

In a small village in Egypt, Ahmed wakes up early. His first task is to check on his animals, then he moves on to the water buffalo, making sure they have enough food and water for the morning. Water buffaloes help him by pulling ploughs through the fields.

After a quick breakfast, he goes to the fields with his water buffalo. This is where he spends most of his day. He walks between the crops, carefully checking the leaves for any signs of pests. He is happy to see the young plant growing strong.

A

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Ahmed wakes up
a) at night b) late c) in the afternoon d) early
- After breakfast, Ahmed goes to the
a) hospital b) balcony c) fields d) school

B

Answer the following questions:

- What is Ahmed first task after waking up?
- How do the water buffaloes help farmers?
- Why does he walk between the crops?

7

Punctuate the following:

- donkeys transport goods to the market
- karim visited his grandma's farm yesterday

8

Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

"Animals and Farmers"

▶ buffaloes - donkeys - falcons

Lesson 3

Farm Friends



Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية



cows

أبقار



sheep

خراف



guard dogs

كلاب حراسة



barn

حظيرة

Extra Vocabulary

الكلمات الإضافية

factory

مصنع

blankets

أغطية / بطانيات

sweater

بلوفر

grass

عُشب

wool

صوف

workers

عَمال

gently

بلطف

mice

فئران

grain

حبوب

carts

عربات

Adjectives

صفات

fresh

طازج

thick

سميك

helpful

مساعد / متعاون

warm

دافئ

harmful

ضار

kind

طيب

near

قريب

caring

مُهتم

Expressions and Prepositions

تعبيرات و حروف جر

for making	لعمل / لمنع	in the field	في الحقل
once a year	مرة كل عام	watch over	يراقب / يراقب عن كثب
walk to	يمشي إلى	run around	يجري حول
to keep them safe	لحفاظ على سلامتهم	take care of	يعتني بـ
around the farm	حول المزرعة	all year	طوال العام
in many ways	بطرق عديدة	sleeping in the sun	نائم تحت الشمس

Definitions تعريفات

farmer	: a person who grows food and raises animals
field	: an area of land with grass for animals
sheep	: a farm animal that gives us thick wool to make clothes
guard dog	: an animal that protects others

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past		PP	
milk	يحب	milked		milked	
watch	يشاهد	watched		watched	
guard	يحرس	guarded		guarded	
explain	يشرح	explained		explained	

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
give	يعطي	gave	given
cut	يقطع	cut	cut
lay	تبيض	laid	laid
run	يجري	ran	run
sleep	ينام	slept	slept
take	يأخذ	took	taken

Listen and read

A Day on the Farm

يوم في المزرعة



Omar and his family are visiting his uncle's farm today. They see many animal helpers working hard. The cows are in the **field**. "Look! The farmer **is milking** a cow now," says Omar happily. Cows give us fresh milk every day for drinking and making cheese.

عمر وعائلته يزورون مزرعة عمه اليوم. يرون العديد من الحيوانات المساعدة التي تعمل بجد. الأبقار في الحقل. يقول عمر بسعادة: "انظروا! الفلاح يحلب بقرة الآن"، الأبقار تعطينا حليبًا طازجًا كل يوم للشرب وصنع الجبن.

They walk to another field where sheep are eating grass. The sheep have thick, warm wool that grows all year. Once a year, workers carefully cut the wool to make **sweaters** and blankets. A smart dog is **watching over** the sheep carefully. The dog's job is to guard the sheep. Right now, the dog is running around the sheep to keep them safe.

يمشون إلى حقل آخر حيث تأكل الأغنام العشب. تمتلك الأغنام صوفًا كثيفًا ودافئًا والذي ينمو طوال العام. مرة واحدة في السنة، يقوم العمال بقص الصوف بعناية لصنع السترات والبطانيات. كلب ذكي يراقب الأغنام بعناية. وظيفة الكلب هي حراسة الأغنام. في الوقت الحالي، الكلب يجري حول الأغنام ليبقيها آمنة.

Near the **barn**, chickens lay eggs every morning for breakfast. The family sees a cat sleeping in the sun. The cat helps by catching mice that might eat the **grain**. Omar's uncle explains, "We take good care of all our animals, and they take care of us too." He shows Omar how the horses help pull **carts** around the farm. Donkeys are strong and can carry heavy loads. "We must always be kind to our animal helpers," the uncle says gently. Omar learns that farm animals are hard workers who help people in many ways.

بالقرب من الحظيرة، تضع الدجاجات بيضاً كل صباح لتناوله على الفطور. ترى العائلة قطة نائمة تحت الشمس. تساعد القطة عن طريق اصطياد الفئران التي قد تأكل الحبوب. يشرح عمه قائلاً: "نحن نعتني بكل حيواناتنا جيداً، وهم يعتنون بنا أيضاً." يوضح لعمر كيف تساعد الخيول في جر العربات حول مزرعة. الحمير قوية ويمكنها حمل الأحمال الثقيلة. يقول العم بلطف: "يجب علينا أن نكون دائماً عطوفين مع مساعديننا من الحيوانات"، يتعلم عمر أن حيوانات المزرعة تعمل بجد وتساعد الناس بطرق عديدة.

Read and write T (True) or F (False):



Student's
Book

1. Omar is visiting a factory today. (.....)
2. Cows give us milk. (.....)
3. The dog is sleeping near the sheep now. (.....)
4. We get wool from sheep. (.....)
5. Omar thinks the animals are lazy. (.....)

Fill in the blanks using words from the box:



Student's
Book

farmer - cows - sheep - guards

Omar is visiting his uncle, the ①, on the farm. He sees ② that give us milk. He also sees ③ that give us wool. A dog ④ the animals on the farm.

Word Building Skills

Words with the suffixes (-er / -or / -ist)

الكلمات التي تحتوي على اللاحقة (-er / -or / -ist)

These suffixes are often added to words to describe a person who does an action (like a job or activity). and a person who is specialized in something or follows a profession or idea.

تُضاف هذه اللواحق غالبًا إلى الكلمات لوصف شخص يقوم بفعل ما (مثل وظيفة أو نشاط) أو شخص متخصص في شيء ما أو يتبع مهنة أو فكرة معينة.

The way we pronounce these suffixes is very similar.

طريقة نطق هذه اللواحق متشابهة جدًا.

● Suffix: "-er"

● **Pronunciation:** Sounds like /ər/ (a soft "er" sound at the end).

● **Rule:** The stress is on the first part of the word. Say the main part strongly, and add "-er" softly.

النطق: يشبه الصوت /ər/ (صوت "er" خفيف في النهاية).

القاعدة: التشديد على الجزء الأول من الكلمة. قل الجزء الرئيسي بقوة، وأضف "er" بهدوء.

Example:

► farm + er → FARMer

➡ Say "FARM" strongly. Then say "-er" softly and quickly.

● Suffix: "-or"

● **Pronunciation:** Also sounds like /ər/ (a soft "or" sound at the end).

● **Rule:** The stress is on the first part of the word) Say the main part strongly, and add "-or" softly.

النطق: يُشبه الصوت /ər/، (وهو صوت "or" خفيف في النهاية).

القاعدة: التشديد يكون على الجزء الأول من الكلمة. قل الجزء الرئيسي بقوة، وأضف "or" بنعومة.

Example:

► visit + or → VISitor

➡ Say "VIS" strongly. Then say "-it -or" softly and quickly.

● Suffix: "-ist"

● **Pronunciation:** Sounds like /ist/ (a clear "ist" sound at the end).● **Rule:** The stress is usually on the first part of the word. Say "-ist" clearly but quickly.

النطق: يشبه الصوت /ist/ (صوت "ist" واضح في النهاية).

القاعدة: عادة ما يكون التشديد على الجزء الأول من الكلمة. قل "-ist" بوضوح ولكن بسرعة.

Example:

▶ special + ist → SPEcialist

➔ Say "SPE" strongly. Then say "-cial -ist" more quickly.

Fill in the blanks with the right ending. Use -er, -or, or -ist to complete the word:



1. farm

2. visit

3. special

4. help

5. teach

Exercises on Lesson 3

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The black and white was eating grass quietly in the field.

a) cat b) cow c) beetle d) insect

2. The farmer cut the wool from his to sell it.

a) cow b) buffalo c) dog d) sheep

3. The protects the sheep at night from wolves.

a) guard dog b) guide dog c) cow d) lion

4. On cold days, I wear a warm wool

a) sweater b) shorts c) swimming suit d) T-shirt

5. The farmer keeps his animals in the
 a) fridge b) barn c) freezer d) cook
9. Chickens lay that is used for breakfast.
 a) fruits b) eggs c) vegetables d) rice
10. Farmers use to carry crops around the farm.
 a) carts b) sweaters c) wool d) grain

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

important - grass - safe - wool - guard

The first thing we saw was a barn. A cow was standing eating
 ① slowly. Then, we walked and found some sheep eating on
 a hill. My uncle told us that their ② is cut to make sweaters.
 Two ③ dogs came to us, they were friendly, and they watch
 over the sheep and keep them ④

3 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

1. are - uncle's - **We** - visiting - our - today - farm.
 ▶
2. The - **Look!** - is - cow - milking - a - farmer.
 ▶
3. animals - you - **What** - see - can - on - farm - the?
 ▶ ?
4. jobs - do - animals - **What** - on - do - farms?
 ▶ ?

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

A hardworking farmer takes care of his farm every day. He feeds the cows and sheep and checks that they are healthy. The sheep grow thick wool, which is carefully cut once a year to make warm clothes. In the morning, the farmer is milking the cows to get fresh milk for his family. Chickens lay eggs every day, which are collected for breakfast. The farmer uses carts to carry milk, wool, and eggs to the barn, where everything is stored safely.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The farmer feeds the cows and sheep and checks that they are
 a) tired b) healthy c) hungry d) small
- The farmer uses to carry milk, wool, and eggs to the barn.
 a) carts b) chickens c) sheep d) tools

B Answer the following questions:

- What do the sheep provide once a year?
- Why does the farmer milk the cows every morning?
- Where does the farmer store the milk, wool, and eggs?

5 Punctuate the following:

- what does the cow give us



- the dog's job is to guard the sheep



- do you eat eggs for breakfast



- animals help people in many ways



6 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

"A farmer's job"

► milk - feed - guard dogs



.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Lessons 4-5

Writing About Animal Helpers
Project: Think and Create a poster

Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية



feathers

ريش



egret

أبو قردان



beak

منقار



wildlife

الحياة البرية



flies

ذباب



view

منظر

Extra Vocabulary

الكلمات الإضافية

documentary

فيلم وثائقي

narrator

راوي

screen

شاشة

hopper

نطاط (يشبه الجراد)

rice plants

نباتات الأرز

chemicals

مواد كيميائية

health

صحة

topic

موضوع

raid (n.)

هجوم

habits

عادات

fact

حقيقة

control

سيطرة

Adjectives

صفات

feathered	ذو ريش	sharp	حاد
long	طويل	single	واحد
different	مختلف	same	متشابه
patient	صبور	natural	طبيعي

Expressions and Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر

a documentary about	فيلم وثائقي عن	on the screen	على الشاشة
walk through water	المشي عبر الماء	suddenly	فجأة
walk alongside water	المشي بجانب الماء	doesn't mind	لا تمانع
make it healthier	يجعلها أكثر صحة	healthy for	صحي لـ
in a single day	في يوم واحد	hundreds of	مئات من

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
bother	يُزعج	bothered	bothered
harm	يضر	harmed	harmed
spot	يلاحظ	spotted	spotted
appreciate	يقدّر	appreciated	appreciated
provide	يوفر	provided	provided

Present		Past	PP
organize	ينظم	organized	organized
describe	يصف	described	described
control	يتحكم	controlled	controlled
raid	يهاجم	raided	raided

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
stand	يقف	stood	stood
catch	يمسك	caught	caught
fly	يطير	flew	flown

Read and learn

The Farmer's Feathered Friend

صديق المزارع ذو الريش

I am watching a wildlife **documentary** about animal helpers right now.

The **narrator** says that **egrets** help farmers by eating insects that **harm** crops. On the screen, a white egret is standing in a field. Suddenly, the egret **raids** quickly with its sharp **beak**. It is catching **hoppers** that eat the rice plants. Egrets have long legs that help them walk through water.



أشاهد الآن فيلمًا وثائقيًا عن الحياة البرية عن مساعدي الحيوانات. يقول الراوي أن طيور أبو قردان تساعد المزارعين من خلال أكل الحشرات التي تضر بالمحاصيل. على الشاشة، يقف طائر أبو قردان أبيض في الحقل. فجأة، يهجم أبو قردان بمنقاره الحاد بسرعة. إنه يصطاد الجراد الصغير الذي يأكل نباتات الأرز. لدى طيور أبو قردان أرجل طويلة تساعد على المشي خلال الماء.



These birds often work alongside water buffaloes in the fields. They sometimes stand on the buffaloes' backs to get a better view. The egret eats flies that bother the buffalo, and the buffalo doesn't mind. Farmers don't need to use as many chemicals because of these birds. This makes the food healthier for people to eat. Egrets can eat hundreds of insects in a single day. They fly to different fields to find their food. Their white feathers make them easy to spot against the green plants. Farmers appreciate these beautiful birds because they provide natural insect control.

غالبًا ما تعمل هذه الطيور جنبًا إلى جنب مع الجاموس المائي في الحقول. يقفون أحيانًا على ظهور الجاموس للحصول على رؤية أفضل. يأكل أبو قردان الذباب الذي يزعج الجاموس، والجاموس لا يمانع. لا يحتاج المزارعون إلى استخدام الكثير من المواد الكيميائية بسبب هذه الطيور. وهذا يجعل الطعام صحيًا أكثر للناس لتناوله. تستطيع طيور أبو قردان أن تأكل مئات الحشرات في يوم واحد. وتطير إلى حقول مختلفة للعثور على طعامها. ريشها الأبيض يجعل من السهل رؤيتها وسط النباتات الخضراء. ويُقدّر المزارعون هذه الطيور الجميلة لأنها توفر مكافحة طبيعية للحشرات.



Writing Notes:

Descriptive writing

الكتابة الوصفية

How to write descriptive writing:

كيفية الكتابة الوصفية:

Guiding Writing Steps:

خطوات الكتابة:

1. Choose a topic: Pick an animal helper.

اختر موضوعًا: اختر أحد الحيوانات المساعدة.

2. Use strong adjectives: sharp, patient, beautiful, natural.

استخدم صفات قوية: حاد، صبور، جميل، طبيعي.

3. Show, don't tell: Instead of "The egret is helpful," write "The egret is catching harmful insects in the rice field."

وضح، لا تخبر: بدلاً من "أبو قردان الأبيض مفيد" اكتب "يصطاد أبو قردان الحشرات الضارة في حقل الأرز."

4. Use the correct tense : Use Present Simple for habits/jobs and Present Continuous for what is happening now.

استخدم الزمن الصحيح: استخدم المضارع البسيط للعادات/الوظائف والمضارع مستمر لما يحدث الآن.

5. Organize your ideas : Start with what you see, describe the job, and finish with your opinion.

نظم أفكارك: ابدأ بما تراه، ووصف العمل، وانتهي برأيك.

Imagine you are watching a show about an animal helper. Write a paragraph (30-40 words) describing what you see. Describe the animal's job and what it is doing now.



Animal Facts:

.....

.....

Animal Habits:

.....

.....



Project

"BE A HERO: BE KIND TO ANIMAL HELPERS!"

RESPECT WORKING ANIMALS

- Don't pet or distract guide dogs – they're working!

لا تداعب أو تشتت كلاب الإرشاد - فهي تعمل!

- Speak softly around animals – loud noises scare them.

تحدث بهدوء حول الحيوانات - الأصوات العالية تخيفها.

- Never feed animals without asking – some food can make them sick.

لا تطعم الحيوانات أبدًا دون أن تسأل - بعض الأطعمة قد تجعلها مريضة.



Exercises on Lessons 4 & 5

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. are birds that are called farmer's friends.
 a) Egrets b) Insects c) Leopards d) Gecko
2. The bird's colorful are amazing.
 a) legs b) feathers c) slippers d) bags
3. Protecting animals is very important to keep the safe.
 a) tractors b) ploughs c) danger d) wildlife
4. The egret used its long, sharp to catch a fish from the water.
 a) beak b) eye c) nose d) back
5. We are watching an amazing about animals' wildlife.
 a) chess b) board c) balcony d) documentary
6. The of the audiobook had a calm voice.
 a) narrator b) pilot c) farmer d) nurse

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

hard - fresh - farm - patient - health

I watched a wildlife documentary about animals. We have to be kind to our animals helpers on the ① A good farmer provides ② water, food, and clean, safe shelter. It's important to be ③ with them. Farmers can show that by taking care of their ④ These animals are very important in our lives.

3 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

1. am - I - documentary - watching - a - wildlife - about.

▶

2. Egrets - farmers - by - insects - help - eating.

▶

3. usually - animals - Do - see - people - helping - you?

▶

4. egret - flies - The - eats - bother - that - buffalo - the.

▶

5. appreciate - Farmers - beautiful - always - these - birds.

▶

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Egrets help farmers by eating insects that harm crops. It raids quickly with its sharp beak to catch hoppers that eat the rice plants. Egrets can eat hundreds of insects in a single day. These birds sometimes stand on the buffaloes' backs to get a better view. The egret eats flies that bother the buffalo, and the buffalo doesn't mind. Farmers don't need to use as many chemicals because of these birds. This makes the food healthier for people to eat. Farmers appreciate these beautiful birds because they provide natural insect control.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Egrets help the farmers because they eat

- a) rice b) birds c) hoppers d) buffaloes

2. Because of the egrets' help, farmers don't need to use many

- a) chemicals b) water c) food d) animals

B Answer the following questions:

3. Why are the egret and the buffalo friends?

▶

4. Why do farmers appreciate the egrets?

▶

5. Give a suitable title for the text.



5

Punctuate the following:

1. you should be kind to all animals



2. is he playing now



3. does Adam work on a farm



4. malak helps her mother every day



6

Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

"Describe your favorite animal helper"



▶ What kind of it?

▶ What does it help you for?

▶ How do you treat it?

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Review on Unit 4

Main Vocabulary

police dogs	كلاب الشرطة	guide dogs	كلاب الإرشاد
dolphins	الدلافين	horses	الأحصنة
officers	الضباط	criminals	المجرمين
water buffalo	الجاموس المائي	donkey	حمار
pigeon	حمامة	falcon	صقر
gecko	الوزغ	scarab beetle	خنفساء الجعلان
cows	الأبقار	sheep	خروف
guard dogs	كلاب الحراسة	feathers	الريش
beak	منقار	egret	أبو قردان
wildlife	الحياة البرية	flies	الذباب

Language Notes

Present Simple Tense:

- When to use it:
 - We use the present simple to talk about things in general.
 - Things in general can be:
 - Facts → Lions eat meat.
 - Habits - repeated actions → I play every day.
 - Likes → I like cake.
 - Jobs → My father teaches English.

Present Continuous Tense:

- When to use it:
 - We use the present continuous tense to talk about actions happening now.
- Examples:
 - I am studying now.
 - Look! She is working.
 - Listen! They are singing.
 - It's raining heavily today.

Pronunciation

- Words with the suffixes (-er / -or / -ist)
 - Suffix: "-er"
 - Example: farm + er → FARMer
 - Say "FARM" strongly. Then say "-er" softly and quickly.
 - Suffix: "-or"

- Example: visit + or → VISitor
 - Say "VIS" strongly. Then say "-or" softly and quickly.
- Suffix: "-ist"
 - Example: special + ist → SPEcialist
 - Say "SPE" strongly. Then say "-cial -ist" more quickly.



Dictation:

dolphins	خطر
guide dogs	مكفوفون
police dogs	نباح - ينبح
criminals	إنقاذ - ينقذ
officers	مساعدين
pigeon	أحمال
falcon	حاويات
gecko	بلح
ploughs	حشرات
scarab beetle	آفات
water buffalo	طرق
barn	سماد
guard dogs	مُرَاسلون
sheep	صوف
feathers	أغطية / بطانيات
egret	هجوم
beak	راوي
wildlife	نظام
flies	مواد كيميائية
view	سيطرة

Writing Samples

"Animals' Jobs"

Many animals have important jobs. Police dogs help to find lost people and catch criminals, guide dogs help the blind, and horses help farmers. Bees work hard to create honey from flowers. These animal make our lives safer and better.

"Your daily routine in school days"

Many animals work hard to help farmers. Water buffaloes pull ploughs to prepare the soil for planting crops. Donkeys carry heavy loads to markets. Falcons help farmers by hunting small animals that damage crops. All these animals show how people and animals can work together and help each other.

"A farmer's job"

A farmer's job starts early. The first thing to do is to go to the barn. He feeds the animals, then he milks the cows and collects eggs. He works in the fields, planting and watering crops. He is hardworking.

"Describe your favorite animal helper"

My favorite animal helper is the brave guide dog. These smart dogs are calm and careful, leading their blind owners safely through streets and crowds. They are loyal and trusted. Their skill makes everything to the people they serve easier.

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب.



1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

(6Ms)

1. Omar is visiting his uncle's farm with his (friends - family - daughter).
2. They see many animal helpers working (soft - gentle - hard).
3. The farmer is (milking - feeding - carrying) a cow now.

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box: (4Ms)

lost - guiding dogs - jobs - Do

Student : What kind of ① do animals do?

Teacher : Well, police dogs help officers find ② people.

Student : That's amazing! ③ other dogs have jobs too?

Teacher : Yes, some ④ help blind people.

3 Choose the correct answer:

(4Ms)

1. The farmer uses his to plough the fields every morning.
a) water buffalo b) beetle c) cat d) lion
2. It was an amazing show to see playing in the waves.
a) dolphins b) insects c) flies d) bugs
3. I dinner with my family right now.
a) is eating b) am eating c) eat d) eats
4. Ali always English on Saturdays.
a) study b) studies c) studied d) studying

4 Read and correct the underlined mistakes:

(8Ms)

1. Ahmed always eat cheese for breakfast.

(.....)

2. Sally are playing the violin now. (.....)

3. We visit our uncle today. (.....)

4. They doesn't play in school days. (.....)

5 Read the following passage, then answer the questions: (10Ms)

In the fields, the farmer checked his crops. He wanted to protect them from pests. The sheep walked quietly and the brave guard dog watched over to keep them safe from wolves. The farmer cut the sheep's wool once a year to make warm sweaters and blankets. There was the strong water buffalo. It helped the farmer to pull the ploughs. In the evening, the farmer took the animals to their shelters, and stored the day's crops. He came back home looking tired but proud of another day's work.

A Read and write T(True) or F(False):

1. How often did the farmer cut the sheep's wool? (.....)

2. How did the water buffalo help? (.....)

B Choose the correct answer:

3. The farmer wanted to protect the crops from (pests - lions - dogs - donkeys).

4. The brave guarded (wolf - dog - cow) watched over to keep the sheep safe.

5. In the evening, the farmer took the animals to their (doors - shelters - cars - bikes).

6 Write a short paragraph of (4) sentences using the following guiding words: (8Ms)

"Our Day on the Farm"

Guiding elements: ► help - milking - watch

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:



(2Ms)

1. In my country, few animals work hard. (.....)
2. Strong water buffalos pull ploughs through fields. (.....)
3. The farmer is working with his sheep to prepare the soil. (.....)
4. Donkeys carry heavy loads. (.....)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

(2Ms)

1. The black and white was eating grass quietly in the field.
 a) cat b) cow c) beetle d) insect
2. A: you usually read stories? B: Yes, I do.
 a) Do b) Does c) Are d) Am
3. The bird's colorful are amazing.
 a) legs b) feathers c) slippers d) bags
4. We to the tennis court now.
 a) are going b) went c) go d) is going

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (2Ms)

officers - guide - calm - important - safe

All dogs must be appreciated. Loyal guard dogs keep us ① in the streets. The ② dogs help their blind owners, and the smart police dogs help ③ to find down lost people and catch criminals. Dogs are helpful. They are very ④

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

(7Ms)

Many animals work quietly beside us. Pigeons carry important messages over long distances. Falcons fly over fields, hunting rats and protecting crops. Geckos walk on walls inside houses, eating insects at night. Under the ground, scarab beetles clean the soil and help plants grow. On busy city streets, guide dogs help their owners walk safely. Even bees help grow the fruits and nuts we eat. These animals show how people and animals can live and work together in peace.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Geckos eatat night.
a) insects b) beetles c) dogs d) plants
2. help the blind walk safely.
a) Bees b) Water buffalo c) Guide dogs d) Pigeons

B Answer the following question:

3. What does the falcon do over fields?

▶

4. What is the pigeon's job?

▶

5. What does the scarab beetle do underground?

▶

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

(4Ms)

1. Salma (go) to school early every day.
2. He (study) right now, but he is listening to music.

6

Put the words in the correct order to form sentences: (2Ms)

1. people - Horses - calm - help - happy - feel - and.

▶

2. jobs - do - animals - What - on - do - farms?

▶ ?

7

Punctuate the following:

(4Ms)

1. do you like visiting animals on farms

▶

2. geckos climb on walls and eat insects

▶

8

Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below: (7Ms)

"A farmer's Job"



▶ milk - feed - wool

.....

.....

.....

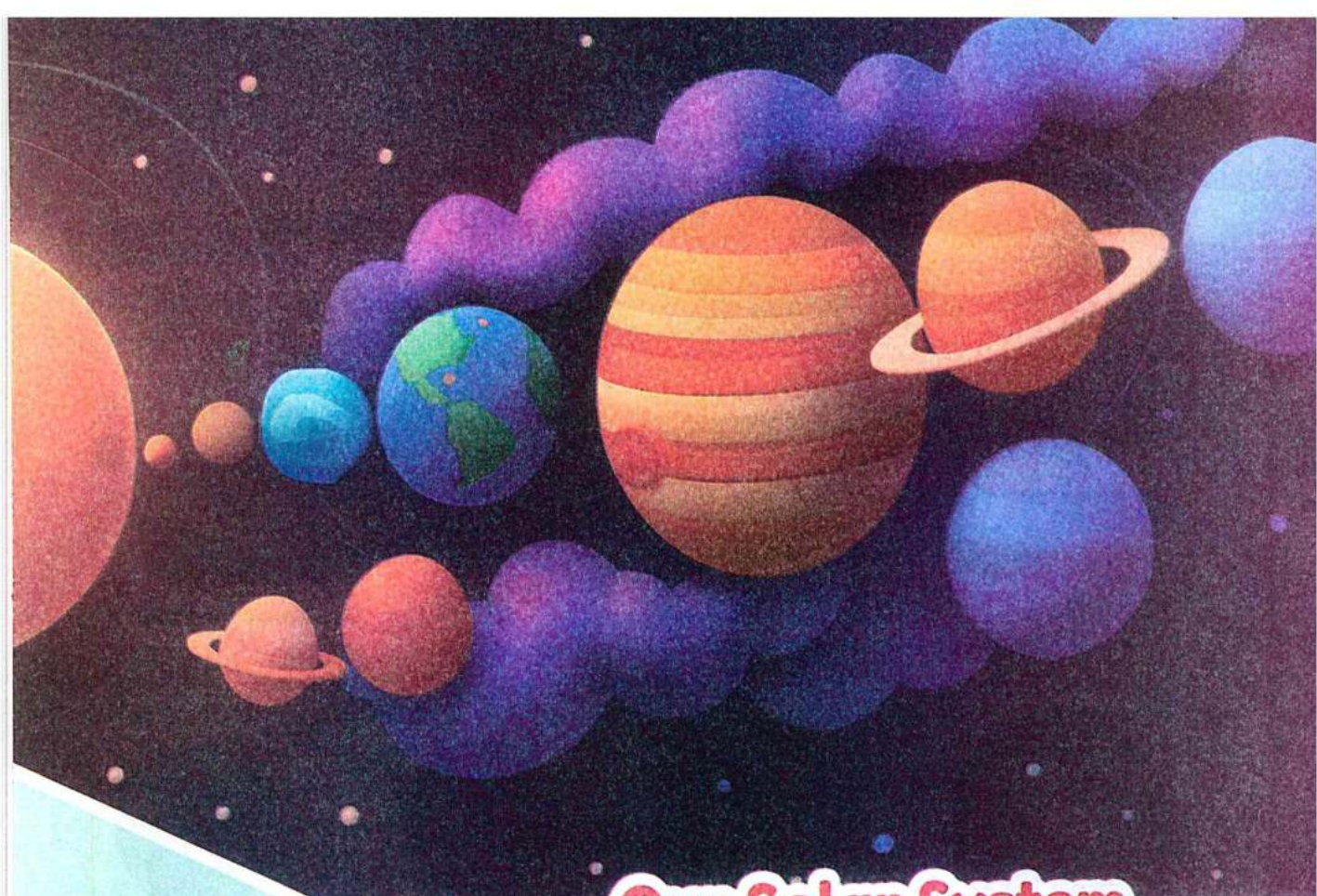
.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Unit 5

Our Solar System

مجموعتنا الشمسية

Learning Outcomes



Speaking

- Explain their choices in a discussion about which planet is their favorite
- Answer questions based on visual information, such as pictures of space or planets
- Present their work to the class



Listening

- Recall keywords and names of planets from a dialog about the solar system
- Identify the main ideas of a conversation about space exploration
- Use information from a listening passage to determine the order of events



Reading

- List key facts from an article
- explain the meaning of compound words within a text
- Distinguish between adjectives and other parts of speech in a story
- Determine the moral or lesson of a story



Writing

- Use correct comparative and superlative forms of adjectives in sentences
- Write a descriptive paragraph about a space trip, applying adjectives to make their writing more interesting
- Design a brochure for a planet, incorporating a title, facts, and images

Lesson 1

From Mercury to Neptune



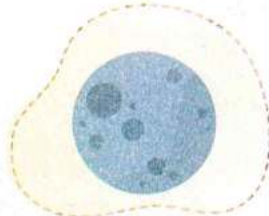
Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية



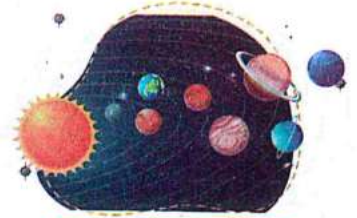
The Sun

الشمس



Moon

القمر



the solar system

المجموعة الشمسية



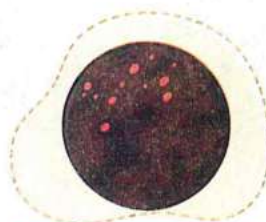
galaxy

مجرة



Saturn

كوكب زحل



Mars

كوكب المريخ



Earth

كوكب الأرض

Extra Vocabulary

الكلمات الإضافية

planets	كواكب	space	فضاء
planetarium	القبة السماوية	museum	متحف
soil	تربة	iron	حديد
danger	خطر	Red Planet	الكوكب الأحمر
Mercury	كوكب عطارد	Venus	كوكب الزهرة
rings	حلقات	Jupiter	كوكب المشتري
jokes	اللكات	Milky Way	مجرة درب التبانة

Adjectives

صفات

favorite	مفضل	extra	إضافي
interesting	ممتع	iron-rich	غني بالحديد
large	كبير جداً	shiny	لامع
famous	مشهور	exciting	مثير
main	رئيسي	dangerous	خطير

Expressions and Prepositions

تعابير وحروف جر

live on another planet	يعيش على كوكب آخر	at the space museum	في متحف الفضاء
in the solar system	في المجموعة الشمسية	welcome to	مرحباً بكم في
Good job!	عمل جيد!	Exactly!	تماماً
part of	جزء من	famous for	مشهور بـ

Definitions تعريفات

Mercury	the smallest planet
Mars	the red planet
Saturn	a planet with rings
galaxy	a group of many stars

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past		PP	
visit	يزور	visited		visited,	
name	يُسمى	named		named	
explore	يستكشف	explored		explored	

Present		Past	PP
choose	يختار	chose	chosen
see	يرى	saw	seen
have	يمتلك	had	had
tell	يخبر \ يحكي	told	told

Listen and read:



A Trip to the Planetarium

رحلة إلى القبة السماوية

“At the space museum, Amina, Omar, and a guide talk about planets and stars.”

في متحف الفضاء، تتحدث أمينة وعمر ومرشد الرحلة عن الكواكب والنجوم.



Guide: Welcome, everyone, to the planetarium! Today, we will learn about the solar system.

المرشد: أهلاً بكم جميعاً في القبة السماوية! اليوم سنتعرف على المجموعة الشمسية.

Amina: Wow! Oh, look at the big screen. I can see the Sun and the Moon.

أمينة: واو! انظروا إلى الشاشة الكبيرة. أستطيع رؤية الشمس والقمر.

Guide: Mars is called the Red Planet because its iron-rich soil makes it look red.

المرشد: يُسمى المريخ “الكوكب الأحمر” لأن تربته الغنية بالحديد تجعله يبدو أحمر اللون.

Amina: Ohhh, that’s interesting!

أمينة: يا إلهي، هذا مثير للإهتمام!

Omar: Yeah! I see the planets: Mercury, Venus, Earth, and Mars.

عمر: نعم! أرى الكواكب: عطارد، والزهرة، والأرض، والمريخ.

Guide: Good job! Those are the four small planets. Can you name a big one?

المرشد: أحسنت! هذه هي الكواكب الأربعة الصغيرة. هل تستطيعان تسمية أكبرهم حجماً؟

Amina: Is it Jupiter?

أمينة: هل هو المشتري؟

Guide: Yes! Jupiter is the largest planet in the solar system.

المرشد: نعم! المشتري هو أكبر كوكب في المجموعة الشمسية.

Omar: And those shiny rings-are they around Saturn?

عمر: وهذه الحلقات اللامعة - هل هي حول زحل؟

Guide: Exactly! Saturn is famous for its rings.

المرشد: تماماً! زُحل مشهور بحلقاته.

Amina: Wow, so many stars!

أمينة: واو، كم هائل من النجوم!

Guide: Yes, they are part of a galaxy. Our galaxy is called the Milky Way.

المرشد: نعم، إنها جزء من مجرة. مجرتنا تُسمى "درب التبانة".

Omar: So, the solar system is inside it?

عمر: إذن المجموعة الشمسية تقع داخلها؟

Guide: Exactly! The Sun, Moon, and planets make space exciting to explore.

المرشد: تماماً! الشمس والقمر والكواكب تجعل الفضاء مثيراً للاستكشاف.



Student's
Book

1. Amina sees the Sun and Moon on the screen.
2. Omar says Jupiter is the smallest planet.
3. Saturn is famous for its rings.
4. The solar system is inside a galaxy.

()

()

()

()

Read the sentences and fill in the blanks using words from the box:



Student's
Book

rings - Mars - largest - Milky

1. Jupiter is the planet in the solar system.
2. is called the Red Planet.
3. Saturn has shiny around it.
4. Our galaxy is called the Way.

Exercises on Lesson 1

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The looked very shiny last night.
a) sun b) moon c) planet d) system
2. We use sunscreen to protect us from the
a) moon b) sun c) Mercury d) Mars
3. Our planet Earth is the third one in the system.
a) super b) sound c) solar d) soft
4. Our is called "Milky Way".
a) court b) sun c) stars d) galaxy
5. is famous for its rings.
a) Saturn b) Mercury c) Venus d) Jupiter
6. We live on the planet It's the only one that has life.
a) Mars b) Earth c) Jupiter d) Venus
7. Mercury is the planet in the solar system.
a) largest b) safest c) smallest d) quietest
8. We use red flags to warn someone of
a) safe b) peace c) food d) danger
9. We will go to the museum to learn about planets.
a) dogs b) space c) animals d) dreams
10. Yesterday, my family and I went to the where we saw many planets.
a) system b) copper c) planetarium d) galaxy

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

rings - planets - galaxy - guide - stars

We went to the planetarium yesterday. The ① gave us information about the solar system. He told us that we have eight ② Jupiter is the biggest planet, but the smallest one is Mercury. Saturn is famous for its ③ There are many ④ and he told us that all of them are part of a galaxy.

3 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

1. at - museum - were - **We** - the - yesterday.

▶

2. four - are - **Those** - planets - the - small.

▶

3. favorite - planet - your - **Which** - is - one?

▶ ?

4. you - to - **Do** - visit - want - the moon - Mars - or?

▶ ?

5. smallest - is - the - planet - **Mercury** - solar system - the - in.

▶

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

At the planetarium, the guide showed us the solar system on a big screen. He said that Mars is red because its soil is rich with iron. We asked him to name the largest planet. Our friend guessed Jupiter correctly. We saw Saturn's rings and we noticed a lot of stars. The guide explained that they are part of our galaxy. He also gave us important information like our galaxy is called the Milky Way which has the solar system. We were very excited to go again and explore the space.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. They were at the
a) stadium b) planetarium c) park d) garden
2. is the largest planet.
a) Mars b) Mercury c) Venus d) Jupiter

B Answer the following questions:

3. Who showed them the solar system?



4. Why is Mars red?



5. What is our galaxy called?



5 Punctuate the following:

1. is she going to the planetarium



2. I know mars is the Red Planet



6 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

"A Trip to a Planetarium"

solar system - Red Planet - Jupiter

Lesson 2

From Egypt to the Galaxy
(Sara Sabry: Reaching for the Stars)

Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية



astronaut

رائد فضاء



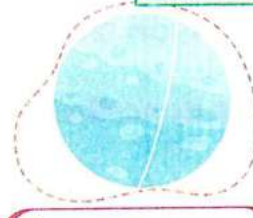
flag

علم



engineer

مهندس



Uranus

كوكب أورانوس

Extra Vocabulary

الكلمات الإضافية

Arab

عربي

young people

الشباب

dreams

أحلام

Neptune

كوكب نيبتون

universe

كون

scientist

عالم

humans

بشر

female

أنثى

season

موسم

mission

مهمة

Adjectives

صفات

dry

جاف

further

أبعد

useful

مفيد

young

صغير

colorful

ملون

exciting

مثير

popular

شعبي

distant

بعيد

bright

ساطع

high

مرتفع

impossible

مستحيل

Expressions and Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر

travel into space	يسافر إلى الفضاء	in work	في العمل
from space	من الفضاء	farther away	أبعد
walk on the moon	يمشي على القمر	around the world	حول العالم
It's described as	يُوصف كـ ...	up close	عن قرب
compare to	يقارن بـ	in a galaxy	في مجرة

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
inspire	يُلهم	inspired	inspired
follow	يتبع	followed	followed
believe	يعتقد / يؤمن	believed	believed
describe	يوصف	described	described
imagine	يتخيل	imagined	imagined
realize	يُدرك	realized	realized
compare	يقارن	compared	compared
discover	يكشف	discovered	discovered

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
do	يفعل	did	done
think	يفكر	thought	thought
become	يصبح	became	become
hold	يمسك	held	held

Read and learn



Egypt's First Astronaut أول رائدة فضاء مصرية

Sara Sabry is the first Egyptian female astronaut. She became the first Arab engineer to travel into space in 2022. Sara says "I want to inspire young people in Egypt to follow their dreams and believe that nothing is impossible." In her work, she studied the solar system and the planets.



سارة صبري هي أول رائدة فضاء مصرية. أصبحت أول عربية مهندسة تسافر إلى الفضاء في عام 2022. تقول سارة "أريد أن ألهم الشباب في مصر ليسعوا وراء أحلامهم ويؤمنوا بأنه لا يوجد شيء مستحيل." درست في عملها النظام الشمسي والكواكب.

She explains:

Mercury is smaller than Earth. Venus is hotter than Earth. Mars is drier than Earth, while Jupiter is the largest planet. Saturn has beautiful rings, and Uranus and Neptune are colder and farther away.

و توضح سارة أن:

عطارد أصغر من الأرض. كوكب الزهرة أكثر سخونة من الأرض. المريخ أكثر جفافاً من الأرض، في حين أن المشتري هو أكبر كوكب. زحل لديه حلقات جميلة، وأورانوس ونبتون أكثر برودة وأبعد.

Sara describes looking at the Sun, the Moon, and the stars in our galaxy. "The galaxy is bigger than we imagine," she says. Seeing Earth from space made her realize how small our planet is compared to the universe.

تتحدث سارة عن النظر إلى الشمس والقمر والنجوم في مجرتنا. "المجرة أكبر مما نتخيل"، كما تقول. رؤية الأرض من الفضاء جعلها تدرك مدى صغر كوكبنا مقارنة بالكون.

Answer the following questions:



Student's Book

1. In what year did Sara Sabry travel into space?



2. Which two planets are described as colder and farther away?



Choose the correct answer:

1. Who is Sara Sabry?
 - a) The first Egyptian pilot
 - b) The first Egyptian female astronaut
 - c) The first woman to walk on the Moon
 - d) A scientist who discovered Jupiter
2. What does Sara Sabry want to inspire young people in Egypt to do?
 - a) Travel around the world
 - b) Study the planets
 - c) Follow their dreams and believe nothing is impossible
 - d) Become astronauts like her
3. Which planet is described as the largest?
 - a) Earth
 - b) Mars
 - c) Jupiter
 - d) Saturn

Language In Use



Comparatives and Superlatives

Comparatives:

- We use comparatives to show how two things are different.

نستخدم صيغة المقارنة لإظهار كيف يختلف شيان عن بعضهما.

Short Adjectives

الصفات القصيرة

Examples:

▶ Tom is tall.

توم طويل.

▶ Jack is taller than Tom.

جاك أطول من توم.

▶ Charlie is the tallest.

تشارلي هو الأطول.

- To compare two people or things:

للمقارنة بين شيئين أو شخصين:

- Add "-er" to short adjectives with (one syllable).

أضف "-er" للصفات القصيرة (ذات مقطع واحد).

- Put "than" after the adjective.

ضع كلمة "than" بمعنى (من) بعد الصفة.

Step Ahead

Example:

▶ tall طويل → taller than أطول من

Superlatives:

- We use superlatives to show that one thing is the most in a group of three or more.

نستخدم صيغة التفضيل لإظهار أن شيئًا واحدًا هو الأكثر ضمن مجموعة مكونة من ثلاثة أشياء أو أكثر.

- Add "-est" to short adjectives with (one syllable).
أضف "-est" للصفة القصيرة (ذات مقطع واحد).
- Put "the" before the adjective.
ضع كلمة "the" قبل الصفة.

Example:

▶ tall طويل → the tallest الأطول

Note:

- Double the last consonant if the adjective ends in adjective consonant + vowel + consonant.
نضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير لو انتهت الصفة بحرف ساكن + حرف متحرك + حرف ساكن.

Examples:

▶ big → bigger, biggest

▶ fat → fatter, fattest

▶ hot → hotter, hottest

▶ thin → thinner, thinnest

- Change "-y" into "-i" if the adjective ends in a consonant + y.

غير "y" إلى "i" لو انتهت الصفة بحرف ساكن + y.

Examples:

▶ easy → easier, easiest

▶ pretty → prettier, prettiest

● Irregular Adjectives (No rules—must memorize!)

صفات شاذة (بلا قواعد - يجب حفظها!).

Examples:

▶ good → better, best

▶ bad → worse, worst

▶ far → farther, farthest

▶ far → further, furthest

▶ Long Adjectives

الصفات الطويلة

● To compare two people or things.

للمقارنة بين شيئين أو شخصين.

▶ Put "more" before long adjectives.

ضع "more" قبل الصفات الطويلة.

▶ Put "than" after the adjective.

ضع كلمة "than" بمعنى (من) بعد الصفة.

Example:

▶ expensive أغلى → more expensive من

▶ A car is more expensive than a bike.

● To show the most among three or more things:

لنظهر أن شيئاً ما هو الأكثر بين ثلاثة أشياء أو أكثر.

▶ Put "the most" before long adjectives.

ضع "the most" قبل الصفات الطويلة.

Example:

▶ expensive أغلى → the most expensive

▶ My uncle has the most expensive car.

Remember

▶ beautiful → more beautiful, the most beautiful

▶ useful → more useful, the most useful

▶ difficult → more difficult, the most difficult

▶ interesting → more interesting, the most interesting

- a) useful b) more useful
c) the most useful d) most usefully

2. Mars is than Mercury.

- a) cold b) colder
c) coldest d) more cold

3. The Sun is star in our solar system.

- a) bright b) brighter
c) the brightest d) more bright

4. Mars is planet for scientists to explore.

- a) interesting b) more interesting
c) the most interesting d) most interestingly

2

1

1. The..... worked inside the space station.

- a) farmer b) teacher c) astronaut d) doctor

2. They put their country's on the moon.

- a) flag b) army c) card d) blanket

3. The drew careful plans to build a strong new bridge.

- a) scientist b) criminal c) officer d) engineer

24. My friend shared delicious food like falafel at the party.

- a) Italian b) Arab c) American d) Brazilian

5. She worked hard to make her big of becoming a pilot true.

- a) sword b) storm c) dream d) sleep

6. Our solar system is a small part of our large

- a) union b) country c) car d) universe

7. The used a microscope to study the small things.
 a) baby b) toddler c) scientist d) farmer
8. We saw a rainbow after the rain stopped.
 a) white b) pale c) warm d) colorful
9. Telescopes help us see stars in galaxies.
 a) near b) close c) distant d) beside

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (Grammar)

1. Dirty water can be dangerous for children than for adults.
 a) most b) more c) least d) many
2. The tower is than the pyramid.
 a) the tall b) taller c) tall as d) tall
3. Gold is than silver.
 a) most expensive b) the expensive
 c) expensive d) more expensive
4. The desert is the place on Earth.
 a) driest b) dry c) dry as d) drier
5. Playing video games isn't than learning new skills.
 a) useful as b) more useful c) useful d) as useful
6. Math is difficult subject for me.
 a) more b) the most c) as d) most
7. I think Hurghada is the place for summer vacations.
 a) well b) good c) better d) best
8. Ammar plays tennis than Adel.
 a) good b) best c) better d) bad
9. Our garden is than yours.
 a) more beautiful b) beautiful
 c) the beautiful d) most expensive
10. Ali is the boy in our family.
 a) clever b) cleverer c) cleverest d) more clever

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

smallest - imagine - farther - largest - rings

We read the blog about planets. We found that Mercury is the ① planet while Jupiter is the largest one. Saturn has beautiful ② Uranus and Neptune are colder and ③ away. When we look at the Sun, the Moon, and the stars in our galaxy, we find that our galaxy is bigger than we ④

4 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

1. further - Neptune - **Uranus** - and - are - away.

▶

2. bigger - galaxy - imagine - **The** - than - is - we.

▶

3. wants - young - inspire - to - **She** - people.

▶

4. galaxy - planet - **Which** - in - is - the - our - largest?

▶ ?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. The Great Pyramid is (**famous**) than the Pyramids at Saqqara.

2. Forest is the (**more**) dangerous place for me.

3. The River Nile is (**long**) than the River Thames.

4. The whale is the (**big**) fish in the world.

5. Mount Everest is the (**tall**) mountain in the world.

6. What is the (**exciting**) place to visit in Egypt?

7. August is (**hot**) than January.

8. Your bike is (**newest**) than my bike.

6

Read the text and answer the questions:

The dream of sending people to Mars is becoming real, but the journey might be difficult. The trip alone takes many long months in space. When astronauts arrive, they will face a freezing world with no air to breathe. They try to live by taking all their supplies from Earth or discover how to live on Mars. This makes a mission to Mars the biggest and the most interesting adventure. It shows that our universe is really big and powerful.

A

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The journey might be
 a) harmful b) difficult c) easy d) hard
- The mission to Mars is the biggest and the most adventure.
 a) old b) small c) interesting d) fiction

B

Answer the following questions:

- Which dream is becoming real?
- What difficulties will astronauts face?
- How do they try to live there?

7

Punctuate the following:

- which planet is the coldest one
- malik is older than his brother

8

Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

"The First Egyptian Astronaut"

▶ on the moon - planets - galaxy

Lesson 3

The Planet Project



Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية



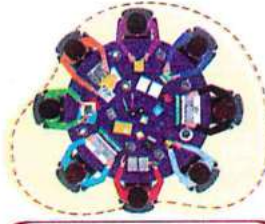
poster

ملصق



color pencils

أقلام ملونة



teamwork

العمل الجماعي



classmates

زملاء الصف

Extra Vocabulary

الكلمات الإضافية

schoolwork

واجبات مدرسية

tools

أدوات

sunlight

أشعة الشمس

my way

طريقتي

chart

مخطط

still

لا يزال

together

معاً

facts

حقائق

project

مشروع

moral

عبرة

Adjectives

صفات

messy

فوضوي

neat

مُرتب\ أنيق

quiet

هادئ

similar

مماثل

worried

قلق

different

مختلف

bright

ساطع

alone

وحده

Expressions and Prepositions

تعبيرات و حروف جر

work on	يعمل على	make a poster about	يصنع ملصقًا حول
at first	أولًا	by himself	بنفسه
a project about	مشروع عن	look worried	يبدو قلقًا
in the end	في النهاية	from the beginning	منذ البداية

Definitions تعريفات

poster	a big paper with pictures and writing
color pencils	tools for drawing and coloring
messy	not clean or not neat
rings	thin circles around Saturn
teamwork	working together to finish something

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
finish	ينهي	finished	finished
sigh	يتنهد	sighed	sighed
add	يضيف	added	added
smile	يبتسم	smiled	smiled

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
feel	يشعر	felt	felt
draw	يرسم	drew	drawn
take	يأخذ	took	taken
shake	يقز	shook	shaken
let	يسمح	let	let

Read and learn



Nada and Adam were classmates in science class. Their teacher asked them to make a classroom poster about the planets.

ندى وآدم كانا زميلين في صف العلوم. طلب منهم معلمهم أن يصنعوا ملصقاً للفصل عن الكواكب.

At first, Adam wanted to do everything himself. He drew Mercury, Venus, and Earth. But the work took too long, and the sunlight colors looked messy.



في البداية، أراد آدم أن يفعل كل شيء بنفسه. لقد رسم عطارد والزهرة والأرض. لكن العمل استغرق وقتاً طويلاً، وبدأت ألوان ضوء الشمس فوضوية.

Nada sat quietly with her color pencils.

"Can I help?" Nada asked.

جلست ندى بهدوء مع أقلامها الملونة.
"هل يمكنني المساعدة؟" سألت ندى.

Adam shook his head. "No, I want it my way."

هز آدم رأسه. "لا، أريد أن أفعل ذلك بطريقتي."

The next day, the homework chart still wasn't finished. The teacher looked worried. Adam sighed. "Okay, Nada, you can help."

وفي اليوم التالي، لم يكن مخطط الواجبات المنزلية قد انتهى بعد. بدى المعلم قلقاً. تنهد آدم.
"حسناً يا ندى، يمكنك المساعدة."

Together, they worked after school. Nada colored Mars red and added rings to Saturn. Adam wrote facts: "Jupiter is the largest planet. Neptune is the farthest."

لقد عملوا معاً بعد المدرسة. قامت ندى بتلوين المريخ باللون الأحمر وأضافت حلقات إلى زحل.
كتب آدم حقائق: "كوكب المشتري هو أكبر الكواكب حجمًا. نبتون هو الأبعد."

When they finished, the planet poster was bright and clear. The teacher smiled. "Great teamwork!"

عندما انتهوا، كان ملصق الكوكب مشرقًا وواضحًا. المعلم ابتسم. "عمل جماعي رائع!"

Nada and Adam smiled too. They learned something bigger than planets.

Working together makes the job easier—and better.

ابتسمت ندى وآدم أيضًا. لقد تعلموا شيئًا أكبر من الكواكب. العمل معًا يجعل المهمة أسهل—وأفضل.

Read and write T (True) or F (False):



Student's Book

1. At first, the poster looked messy because Adam worked alone. (.....)
2. The students learned that teamwork makes the job easier. (.....)
3. The moral of the story is: "It is always better to work alone." (.....)

Fill in the blanks using words from the box:



Student's Book

messy - teamwork - poster - rings - color pencils

1. The teacher asked the students to make a about planets.
2. Adam's pictures looked because he worked alone.
3. Nada used her to color Mars red.
4. Saturn has beautiful around it.
5. The students learned that makes the job easier.

Word Building Skills

- A compound word: is a single word formed by joining two or more separate words together. The new word has its own, specific meaning that is often related to, but different from the meanings of the individual words.

الكلمة المركبة: هي كلمة واحدة تتكون من ضم كلمتين منفصلتين أو أكثر معًا. الكلمة الجديدة لها معناها الخاص والمحدد الذي غالبًا ما يرتبط بمعاني الكلمات الفردية ولكنه يختلف عنها.

- Sometimes compound words are written as one word (classroom), sometimes as two words (ice cream).

في بعض الأحيان تتم كتابة الكلمات المركبة ككلمة واحدة (classroom)، وأحيانًا ككلمتين (ice cream).

Examples:

- ▶ class + room → classroom
- ▶ note + book → notebook
- ▶ sun + light → sunlight
- ▶ lunch + box → lunchbox
- ▶ foot + ball → football
- ▶ tooth + brush → toothbrush
- ▶ team + work → teamwork
- ▶ bed + room → bedroom



Read the text and circle the compound words:



Nada and Adam wanted to finish their schoolwork on time. They used teamwork to read a storybook and share ideas. Adam drew a picture on the blackboard while Nada wrote notes in her notebook. Together, they showed that friendship and hard work can solve problems.

Exercises on Lesson 3

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. We have to create a for the school project.

a) bag

b) bread

c) plane

d) poster

2. We did that great project because of our
 a) teamwork b) selfishness c) failure d) drama
3. Ali and Shady are; they study English in the same class.
 a) enemies b) classmates c) pilots d) stars
4. It will take too long time, but I want to do it my
 a) way b) house c) car d) doll
5. I like using pencils for sketching because they are easier to mix.
 a) wall b) color c) fair d) dry
6. He finished all his early, so he could go to the match.
 a) sleep b) schoolwork c) stars d) planets
7. His handwriting was so that the teacher couldn't read it well.
 a) neat b) organized c) tidy d) messy
8. Students are usually before exams.
 a) safe b) loved c) worried d) dangerous
9. I like to read stories that have
 a) bed b) moral c) table d) oral
10. He made the project by
 a) his b) our c) himself d) my

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

moral - messy - classmates - players - way

Our teacher asked us to make a poster project about teamwork. My ① and I used color pencils, but my desk was ②, so we had to organize it. I was worried about the schoolwork, as I usually do things my ③ We worked together and learned a ④ lesson: sharing ideas is better than working by himself or herself.

3 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

1. are - class - in - **They** - science - classmates - the.

▶

2. he - to - **At first**, - do - wanted - himself - everything.

▶

3. project - him - help - **Nada** - with - can - the.

▶

4. was - project - about - their - **What** - next?

▶ ?

5. lessons - did - learn - moral - **What** - you?

▶ ?

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Jana and Adam were classmates. They had to create a poster about planets. Adam started by himself. He made a messy sun by his color pencils. The teacher looked worried when he saw his work. So, Adam asked Jana for help in some ideas. Through teamwork, they shared their skills. Nada's hand fixed the colors while Adam wrote the facts. The finished poster was bright and full of information. Their work showed all their classmates a clear moral lesson about the power of working together instead of working alone.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Adam made a sun.

- a) perfect b) neat c) messy d) wonderful

2. The finished poster was bright and full of

- a) spots b) information c) projects d) pens

B Answer the following questions:

3. What was the poster about?

▶

4. How did they share their skills as a teamwork?

▶

5. What was the moral lesson of their work?

▶

5 Punctuate the following:

1. did you learn a moral lesson

▶

2. they tried to work together yesterday

▶

3. he looked worried about the project

▶

4. is Mars called the Red Planet

▶

6 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

"A Teamwork Project"

▶ **classmates - together - learn**

▶

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Lessons 4-5

Writing: A Dream in Space
Project: Think and Create
(Space Travel Fact File)



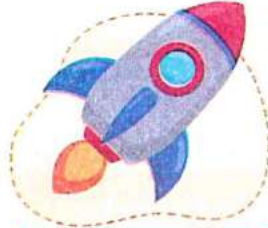
Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية



spaceship

سفينة فضاء



rocket

صاروخ



comet

مذنب



asteroids

كويكبات

Extra Vocabulary

الكلمات الإضافية

creatures

كائنات

explorer

مستكشف

slide

زحليقة

swing

أرجوحة

alien

كائن فضائي

billion

مليار

star-ball rolling

كرة النجمة المتدحرجة

rocks

صخور

dust

غبار

mood

مزاج

trip

رحلة قصيرة

lamp

مصباح

Adjectives

صفات

shiny

لامع

loud

عال

round

مستدير

glowing

متوهج

soft

ناعم

proud

فخور

real

حقيقي

imaginary

خيالي

Expressions and Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر

go up into the sky	يصعد إلى السماء	on Earth	على الأرض
outside the moon	خارج القمر	inside / in a spaceship	داخل / في سفينة فضائية
near the edge	بالقرب من الحافة	smile at	يبتسم لـ
across the sky	عبر السماء	It's shaped like...	إنها على شكل
out of this world	مُبهر / مذهل		

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
land	يهبط	landed	landed
laugh	يفضحك	laughed	laughed
remember	يتذكر	remembered	remembered

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
go	يذهب	went	gone
see	يرى	saw	seen
spin	يدور \ يلف	spun	spun

Read and learn

My Trip in a Spaceship

رحلتي في سفينة الفضاء



Last night, I had a dream. I was inside a big, shiny spaceship with round windows. The rocket made a loud noise as it went up into the dark sky. Outside, the bright Moon looked like a lamp, and the stars were like small lights in the sky.



قد خلّمت بالليلة الماضية، أنني بداخل سفينة فضاء كبيرة ولامعة ذات نوافذ مستديرة. وقد أحدث الصاروخ ضجيجاً عالياً أثناء صعوده إلى السماء المظلمة. في الخارج، كان القمر الساطع يشبه المصباح، وكانت النجوم مثل الأضواء الصغيرة في السماء.

When the spaceship landed, I saw a fun playground in space. The swings were made of light, and the slide looked so colorful. There was even a round star-ball rolling on the ground.

عندما هبطت المركبة الفضائية، رأيت ملعباً ممتعاً في الفضاء. كانت الأراجيح مصنوعة من الضوء، وكانت الزحليقة تبدو ملونة للغاية. حتى أنه كانت هناك كرة نجمية مستديرة تتدحرج على الأرض.

Then, a kind alien with big eyes smiled at me. He showed me his planet. The houses were like soft clouds, and the children played football with the glowing star-ball. We laughed and played together.

ثم ابتسم لي كائن فضائي لطيف ذو عيون كبيرة. لقد أراني كوكبه. كانت المنازل مثل السحب الناعمة، وكان الأطفال يلعبون كرة القدم بكرة النجوم المتوهجة. لقد ضحكنا و لعبنا سوياً.

It was a happy and fun place. When I woke up, I still remembered the bright colors in space.

لقد كان مكاناً سعيداً وممتعاً. عندما استيقظت، كنت لا أزال أتذكر الألوان الزاهية في الفضاء.

Answer the following questions:



Student's Book

1. Where was the narrator at the beginning of the dream?
 - a) In a classroom
 - b) In a big, shiny spaceship
 - c) On the Moon
 - d) In a playground on Earth
2. What did the narrator see when the spaceship landed?
 - a) A mountain
 - b) A playground in space
 - c) A forest
 - d) A school
3. What were the houses on the alien's planet like?
 - a) stone
 - b) metal
 - c) soft clouds
 - d) shining stars
4. Why do you think the dream was happy and fun for the narrator?
5. If you could visit space, what would your dream planet look like? Describe it.



How to write a paragraph describing a trip you had:

كيفية كتابة فقرة تصف رحلتك:

Guiding Writing Steps:

خطوات الكتابة الإرشادية:

- 1 Start with where your story happens (**in a spaceship, on a planet, on the moon etc.**)

١- ابدأ بالمكان الذي تحدث فيه قصتك (في سفينة فضائية، على كوكب، على القمر وما إلى ذلك).

- 2 Who is in your story (**you, a friend, an astronaut, or an alien**).

٢- من هو في قصتك (أنت، صديق، رائد فضاء، أو كائن فضائي).

- 3 Use adjectives to describe what you see (**big, bright, shiny, fun, etc.**).

٣- استخدم الصفات لوصف ما تراه (كبير، مشرق، لامع، ممتع، إلخ).

- 4 Add something exciting that happens (**visiting a planet, finding a playground, etc.**).

٤- أضف شيئاً مثيراً يحدث (زيارة كوكب، العثور على ملعب، إلخ).

- 5 End with how you feel about your trip.

٥- اختتم بما تشعر به تجاه رحلتك.



Think and Create

"Fact File: The Milky Way Galaxy"

ملف الحقائق: مجرة درب التبانة

What is the Milky Way?

The Milky Way is the galaxy where Earth and the Sun are.

It looks like a bright band of stars across the night sky.

It is shaped like a big circle that spins, full of stars, gas, and dust.

ما هي مجرة درب التبانة؟

مجرة درب التبانة هي المجرة التي توجد بها الأرض والشمس.



يبدو وكأنه شريط ساطع من النجوم عبر سماء الليل.
وهي على شكل دائرة كبيرة تدور مليئة بالنجوم والغاز والغبار.

● What's Inside?

The Milky Way has over 200 billion stars!

It has planets, moons, and rocks like comets and asteroids.

The Sun is one of the stars near the edge of our galaxy.

ماذا يوجد بالداخل؟

مجرة درب التبانة لديها أكثر من 200 مليار نجم!
يحتوي على كواكب وأقمار وصخور مثل المذنبات والكويكبات.
الشمس هي أحد النجوم القريبة من حافة مجرتنا.

● Where Are We?

Our solar system is part of the Milky Way.

We live on Earth, the third planet from the Sun.

It takes the Sun about 230 million years to travel once around the Milky Way!

أين نحن؟

نظامنا الشمسي هو جزء من مجرة درب التبانة.
نحن نعيش على الأرض، الكوكب الثالث من الشمس.
تستغرق الشمس حوالي 230 مليون سنة للسفر مرة واحدة حول مجرة درب التبانة!

● Amazing Facts

The Milky Way is so huge that light takes about 100,000 years to cross it!

When you see stars in the night sky, you're looking at our galaxy.

There may be other galaxies like the Milky Way in the universe — even bigger ones!

حقائق مذهلة

إن مجرة درب التبانة ضخمة جدًا لدرجة أن الضوء يستغرق حوالي ١٠٠ ألف عام لعبورها!
عندما ترى النجوم في سماء الليل، فإنك تنظر إلى مجرتنا.
قد تكون هناك مجرات أخرى مثل مجرة درب التبانة في الكون — مجرات أكبر!

● Follow these steps to make your project out of this world!

اتبع هذه الخطوات لجعل مشروعك مذهل!

Now, Create Your Own Space Fact File

الآن، قم بإنشاء ملف حقائق الفضاء الخاص بك!

① Choose a Planet

١- اختر كوكبًا

② Write 3-4 Short Parts

Use these sections to organize your fact file:

- Welcome to my planet – introduce your planet.
- What you can see – describe what it looks like.
- What you can do – talk about fun or strange activities visitors can try.
- How you will feel – describe the experience or mood.

٢- اكتب ٣-٤ أجزاء قصيرة

استخدم هذه الأقسام لتنظيم ملف الحقائق الخاص بك:

- مرحبًا بك في كوكبي - قدم كوكبك.
- ما يمكنك رؤيته - وصف كيف يبدو.
- ما يمكنك فعله - التحدث عن الأنشطة الممتعة أو الغريبة التي يمكن للزوار تجربتها.
- كيف ستشعر - وصف التجربة أو الحالة المزاجية.

③ Use Adjectives

Make your writing colorful! Use describing words like:

big, hot, shiny, colorful, fun, quiet, bright.

٣- استخدم الصفات

اجعل كتابتك ملونة! استخدم كلمات وصفية مثل:
كبيرة، ساخنة، لامعة، ملونة، ممتعة، هادئة، مشرقة.

④ Add a Compound Word

Include at least one compound word such as:

spaceship, moonlight, starlight, sunlight, spacewalk.

٤- أضف كلمة مركبة

قم بتضمين كلمة مركبة واحدة على الأقل مثل:
سفينة الفضاء، ضوء القمر، ضوء النجوم، ضوء الشمس، السير في الفضاء.

5 Decorate Your Fact File

Draw or decorate with planets, stars, rockets, and spaceships.

Make it creative and bright!

هـ- تزيين ملف الحقائق الخاص بك
ارسم أو زين بالكواكب والنجوم والصواريخ والمركبات الفضائية.
اجعلها إبداعية ومشرقة!

Exercises on Lessons 4 & 5

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- They went in a to explore Mars.
a) car b) spaceship c) boat d) taxi
- We used a telescope to see the , across the night sky.
a) comet b) desert c) sun d) land
- The astronauts found small spinning between Mars and Jupiter.
a) suns b) shops c) gardens d) asteroids
- I saw a very strange walking in the garden yesterday.
a) bed b) sea c) creature d) chair
- The child used her legs to make the go higher and higher.
a) slide b) swing c) scooter d) bike
- We play football in our school
a) classroom b) office c) roof d) playground
- I watched a movie about a/an that came from space to Earth.
a) alien b) apple c) teacher d) doctor
- She turned on the to read her book.
a) table b) chair c) lamp d) room
- My watch is and shiny. I can use it in the dark.
a) glowing b) black c) gloomy d) dim

10. Last night, I saw a shooting star the sky.

- a) of b) across c) on d) about

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

shiny - lamp - alien - round - took

While we were playing in our quiet garden at night, a strange creature was on the swing. It wasn't human; it was a small, friendly ① that came from space. It had big ② eyes and its skin was ③ and bright. It held a glowing shape like a ④ It smiled at me and ran.

3 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

1. big - It - round - a - spaceship - was - windows - with.

.....

2. rocket - noise - The - loud - made - a.

.....

3. looked - The - like - bright - a - moon - lamp.

.....

4. brother - Is - your - taller - you - than?

..... ?

5. is - Milky - galaxy - What - the - Way?

..... ?

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Mariam dreamed that she was in a shiny spaceship. It flew behind glowing asteroids. There was a planet shining like a lamp. She landed near a gentle alien. It took her to a strange playground on a comet. There was a swing made of star-light. Other alien children played there, too. They laughed and had fun together in that quiet, colorful place. When she woke up, she remembered the bright, happy colors from her wonderful space adventure. It was a very good dream.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Mariam dreamed that she was in a
 a) spaceship b) boat c) car d) plane
2. The strange playground was on a
 a) planet b) comet c) window d) table

B Answer the following questions:

3. Where did Mariam fly behind?
 ►
4. What did Mariam do with the other alien children?
 ►
5. What did Mariam remember after waking up?
 ►

5 Punctuate the following:

1. it was a strange space alien ►
2. how did you feel after travelling ►
3. mariam always swings in the park ►
4. who is older Salma or Dina ►

6 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

"Your dream trip in a spaceship"

► alien - glowing - rocket

Review on Unit 5

Main Vocabulary

The Sun	الشمس	color pencils	أقلام ملونة
Moon	قمر	classmates	زملاء الصف
Mercury	كوكب عطارد	galaxy	مجرة
Venus	كوكب الزهرة	astronaut	رجل الفضاء
Mars	كوكب المريخ	engineer	مهندس
Earth	كوكب الأرض	poster	ملصق
Jupiter	كوكب المشتري	teamwork	العمل الجماعي
Uranus	كوكب أورانوس	rocket	صاروخ
Neptune	كوكب نبتون	comet	مذنب

Language Notes



Comparative

- **Use:** to compare between two different nouns.
- **Form:**
Short Adjectives:
Noun +1 v. to be + adjectives + er
+ than + Noun2
(am, is, are)

Example:

- ▶ Ali is older than Ahmed.

- **Form:**
Long Adjectives:
Noun +1 v. to be + more +
adjectives + than +Noun2
(am, is, are)

- ▶ My room is more beautiful than yours.



Superlative

- **Use:** to express the extreme or highest degree of quality of one thing in a group.
- **Form:**
Short Adjectives:
Noun + v. to be + the adjectives
+ est
(am, is, are)

Example:

- ▶ Salma is the smartest girl.

- **Form:**
Noun + v. to be + the most +
adjectives
(am, is, are)

- ▶ My room is the most beautiful one.

Pronunciation

- Sometimes compound words are written and pronounced as one word and sometimes as two words.

Example: ▶ One word: classroom ▶ Two words: ice cream

Dictation:

planets	بشر
planetarium	عالم
the solar system	مُهمة
Saturn	مخطط
Mars	مشروع
galaxy	طريقتي
Earth	لا يزال
Venus	عنزة
Mercury	كائنات
astronaut	زحليقة
engineer	كائن فضائي
Uranus	كرة النجمة المتدرجة
Jupiter	غبار
Milky Way	رحلة قصيرة
space	مستكشف
universe	أرجوحة
spaceship	مليار
rocket	مخور
comet	مزاج
asteroids	مصباح

Writing Samples

"A trip to a Planetarium"

Our solar system is very amazing! At the planetarium, we saw the Red Planet, Mars, very close. Then we learned about Jupiter, the largest planet with a big red spot. The show made space feel real and very close to us.

"The First Egyptian Astronaut"

Sara is the first Egyptian astronaut and the first woman for the Arab world. As an engineer, she went to space in 2022. Sara wanted to inspire people in Egypt to follow their dreams and believe that nothing is impossible.

"A teamwork Project"

Our teamwork project was very helpful. We worked together to make a model of the solar system. Each classmate built a different planet. By sharing our ideas, we learned that the schoolwork is much more perfect than working alone.

"Your Dream Trip in Spaceship"

My dream trip in a spaceship was incredible. It took me behind glowing asteroids. I met a gentle alien creature in a big playground. We shared a quiet moment on a swing, looking at the galaxies. It was really peaceful.

Test 11 on Unit 5

(خاص بالأزهر الشريف)

Total

40

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب.



1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

(6Ms)

1. Sara Sabry is the first Egyptian female (pilot - astronaut - teacher).
2. She traveled to space in (2019 - 2022 - 2020).
3. She studied the solar system and (crops - animals - planets).

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box: (4Ms)

moon - Red Planet - interesting - planetarium

Guide : Welcome, everyone, to the ① today!

Ali : Wow! Oh, look at the big screen. I can see the Sun and the ②

Guide : Mars is called the ③ because its iron-rich soil makes it look red.

Ali : Ohhh, that's ④!

3 Choose the correct answer:

(4Ms)

1. The looked very shiny last night.
a) sun b) moon c) planet d) system
2. Gold is than silver.
a) most expensive b) the expensive
c) expensive d) more expensive
3. It will take too long time, but I want to do it
a) my way b) my house c) my car d) my doll
4. Asser is the boy in our family.
a) clever b) cleverer c) cleverest d) more clever

4

Read and correct the underlined mistakes:

(8Ms)

1. Sandy is more beautiful girl in her family. (.....)
2. Ahmed is tallest than Adam. (.....)
3. My bike is most expensive than yours. (.....)
4. Mercury is smaller then Earth. (.....)

5

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

(10Ms)

My dream started inside a shiny spaceship. I went behind a glowing group of asteroids. We landed on a small world. There was soft star like a lamp. A friendly alien was waiting for me. It took me to a playground on the comet's surface, where was a strange big swing. We played with other young creatures. Our laughter was very loud in the quiet place. The alien took me to see our planet Earth. The memory of that adventure stayed with me all morning.

A

Read and write T(True) or F(False):

1. The speaker's dream began inside a shiny spaceship. (.....)
2. The playground was on Mars' surface. (.....)

B

Choose the correct answer:

3. There was a lamp like a (planet - blanket - star).
4. They played with the other young (creatures - swings - fish).
5. The (teacher - doctor - alien) took me to see planet Earth.

6

Write a short paragraph of (4) sentences using the following guiding words:

(8Ms)

"A Teamwork Project"**Guiding elements:** ► classmates - together - learn

Test 12 on Unit 5

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب.

Total

30



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

(2Ms)

1. Nada and Adam were classmates in English class. (.....)
2. The classroom poster is about the planets. (.....)
3. Nada colored Mars blue. (.....)
4. At the end, the planet poster was bright and clear. (.....)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

(2Ms)

1. They put their country's on the moon.
 a) flag b) army c) card d) blanket
2. The desert is the place on Earth.
 a) driest b) dry c) dry as d) drier
3. I saw a very small walking in the garden yesterday.
 a) bread b) sea c) creature d) chair
4. The tower is than the pyramid.
 a) the tall b) taller c) tall as d) tall

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (2Ms)

difficult - inspire - astronauts - Earth - Jupiter

A human mission to Mars is real now. It will take too long to get there.

① will face a freezing desert. They will need to bring everything from ② with them or learn to live off the land. This makes it the most ③ adventure but also it helps to ④ young people.

4

Read the text and answer the questions:

(7Ms)

Last week, Adam and Nada had another group project. Adam remembered their perfect poster, so he immediately asked for Nada's help. They made a model of the solar system together. Adam wrote facts about planets while Nada painted the planets with careful details. They shared books to check their facts. Their model was the best in the class. They learned a moral lesson that by sharing their different skills, they could create something excellent. Other students started to ask them for teamwork tips. They both felt proud of their work.

A

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Adam asked Nada for
 a) food b) fruit c) help d) playing
2. Adam wrote about planets.
 a) opinion b) facts c) suggestions d) fiction

B

Answer the following question:

3. What did they make?

▶

4. What did Nada do in the project?

▶

5. How did they both feel?

▶

5

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:
(4Ms)

1. The River Nile is (long) than the River Thames
2. Jupiter is (large) planet in the solar system.

6 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences: (2Ms)

1. further - Neptune - Uranus - and - are - away.

▶

2. favorite - planet - your - Which - is - one?

▶ ?

7 Punctuate the following: (4Ms)

1. mars is called the Red Planet

▶

2. did they join the science group

▶

8 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below: (7Ms)

"The First Egyptian Astronaut"



▶ on the moon - planets - galaxy

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Review 2 | On Units 4-5

Test 13 based on units 4 - 5



خاص
بالأزهر الشريف

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب.



1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

(6Ms)

1. Water buffaloes pull (food - ploughs - carts) to prepare the soil.
2. Donkeys carry heavy loads through villages and (markets - schools - rivers).
3. Pigeons can deliver (food - clothes - letters).

2 Read and complete the dialog:

(4Ms)

Milky Way - Mars - solar system - Jupiter

Amina : Wow! Oh, look at the big screen. I can see the Sun and the Moon.

Omar : Yes! I can also see Mercury, Venus, Earth, and ①

Amina : Which one is the largest planet in the ② ?

Omar : I think it is ③

Amina : And what about the planet with shiny rings?

Omar : That is Saturn, famous for its rings. Our galaxy is called the ③

3 Choose the correct answer:

(4Ms)

1. (Dolphins - Police dogs - Horses) are very brave and smart. They help officers catch criminals.
2. A (teacher - farmer - nurse) works on a farm.
3. This cake is the (sweet - sweeter - sweetest) in the bakery.
4. Look! The falcon is (fly - flies - flying) over the field right now.

4 Read and correct the underline mistakes:

(8Ms)

1. Falcons doesn't hunt at night. (.....)
2. The donkey is carry a heavy load at the moment. (.....)
3. Venus is most beautiful than Earth. (.....)
4. Today is hot than yesterday. (.....)

5 Read the following passage, then answer the questions: (10Ms)

Lina and Omar were classmates in science class. Their teacher asked them to make a classroom poster about the planets. At first, Omar wanted to do everything himself. He drew Mercury, Venus, and Earth. Lina sat quietly with her colored pencils. The next day, Omar agreed to let Lina help, and together they finished a bright, clear, and colorful planet poster.

A Write (T) True or (F) False:

1. Lina and Omar were classmates in art class. (.....)
2. Omar wanted to do the poster all by himself at first. (.....)

B Choose the correct answer:

3. The teacher asked them to make a classroom (magazine - book - poster) about the planets.
4. Omar drew Mercury, Venus, and (Mars - Earth - Jupiter) by himself.
5. Together, they finished a (bright - dark - small) and colorful planet poster.

6 Write a short email of (4) sentences using the following guiding elements: (8Ms)

Write an email to your friend, Hady. Tell him about your last visit to a farm. When did you go there? What animals did you see there? What do these animals do to help the farmers? Your email address is hany@gmail.com, and your friend's email address is hady@gmail.com.

From	:	
To	:	
Subject	:	
.....		
.....		
.....		

Test 14 based on units 4 - 5

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب.



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

(2Ms)

1. Hadeer and her family are visiting her uncle's farm today. (.....)
2. The cows do not give milk on the farm. (.....)
3. Sheep are eating grass. (.....)
4. The dog's job is to help feed the cows. (.....)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

(2Ms)

1. Donkeys heavy loads every day.
a) fly b) carry c) plant d) ask
2. Nada used her to color Mars red.
a) poster b) rings c) clothes d) colored pencils
3. The falcon is over the field at this moment.
a) hunted b) hunts c) hunt d) hunting
4. Neptune is distant planet from the Sun.
a) more b) most c) the most d) more than

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (2Ms)

rocket - clouds - alien - Moon - spaceship

Sarah had a dream last night. She was inside a big, shiny ① with round windows. The rocket went up into the sky. Outside, the bright ② looked like a lamp, and the stars were small lights. She saw a playground with swings. A kind ③ showed her his planet, and the houses were like soft ④

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

(7Ms)

Tamer is watching a wildlife documentary about animal helpers on TV. He sees egrets helping farmers by eating insects that harm crops. A white egret stands in a field, catchingoppers with its sharp beak. Egrets often work with water buffaloes, sometimes standing on their backs to eat flies. These birds reduce the need for chemicals, making food healthier. Tamer is amazed at how these birds eat hundreds of insects each day and fly to different fields to find their food. He wishes he could see them in real life on a farm.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Egrets help farmers by eating that harm crops.
 a) insects b) flowers c) seeds d) wheat
- Egrets often work alongside in the fields.
 a) cows b) horses c) goats d) water buffaloes

B Answer the following question:

- What is the wildlife documentary about?

▶

- Why is Tamer amazed?

▶

- What is the main idea of the text?

▶

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (4Ms)

- The (visit) asked for directions to the ancient temple.
- Summer is (popular) season for holidays.

6 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences: (2Ms)

1. the Moon - Do - visit - want - you - to?

▶ ?

2. milk - Cows - fresh - us - give - every day.

▶

7 Punctuate the following: (4Ms)

1. Mars is called the red Planet

▶

2. what animals can you usually see

▶

8 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below: (7Ms)

"A Trip to the Planetarium"



▶ solar system - planets - galaxy

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Story's Video

Offline but Happy

غير متصل بالإنترنت ولكن سعيد

Story

Learning Outcomes

Speaking

- Retell the story "Offline but Happy" using their own words
- Discuss their own experiences about screen time and playing with friends
- Create a short role-play inspired by the story

Listening

- Identify the gist
- Identify the key details
- Arrange events in the correct order after listening
- Answer comprehension questions about what they heard

Reading

- Correctly identify the story elements
- Recognize new vocabulary from the story in context
- Answer different level comprehension questions to show understanding of the text

Writing

- Write short paragraphs summarizing the story
- Write a short paragraph about "A Day without screens"
- Express personal opinions in writing

Story Elements عناصر القصة

- 1 **Title:** The name of the story. عنوان القصة: اسم القصة
- 2 **Setting:** The place and time of the story (When & Where). مكان و زمان حدوث القصة.
- 3 **Characters:** People or animals in a story. الناس أو الحيوانات في القصة.
- 4 **Plot/Problem:** The main events that happen in the story. الأحداث الرئيسية التي تحدث في القصة.
- 5 **Problem:** The main challenge or difficulty in the story. التحدي أو الصعوبة الرئيسية في القصة.
- 6 **Solution:** How the problem is solved. كيف يتم حل المشكلة.
- 7 **Moral:** The lesson the story teaches us. الدرس الذي نتعلمه من القصة.

Characters الشخصيات



Tarek

He is a boy who loves playing games on his tablet and feels lonely without Wi-Fi. At first, he thinks nothing can be fun without the internet, but he later discovers that playing with his friends is more fun than using screens.

طارق ولد يحب لعب الألعاب على جهازه اللوحي ويشعر بالوحدة عندما لا يتوفر اتصال بالإنترنت. في البداية، يعتقد أن لا شيء يمكن أن يكون ممتعًا بدون الإنترنت، لكنه لاحقًا يكتشف أن اللعب مع أصدقائه أكثر متعة من استخدام الشاشات.



Amir

He is an energetic boy who loves racing bikes and playing games. His excitement makes the day more fun for everyone.
أمير ولد نشيط يحب سباق الدراجات ولعب الألعاب. حماسه يجعل اليوم أكثر متعة للجميع.



Laila

She is a cheerful and friendly girl who invites Tarek to join the outdoor fun. She helps him enjoy drawing, biking, and playing at the park.

ليلى فتاة مرحة وودودة تدعو طارق للانضمام إلى المرح في الخارج. تساعد على الاستمتاع بالرسم وركوب الدراجات واللعب في الحديقة.



Dina

She is a kind friend who encourages Tarek to keep playing with the group. She helps him feel included and happy outside.
دينا صديقة طيبة تشجع طارق على الاستمرار في اللعب مع المجموعة. تساعد على الشعور بالانتماء والسعادة أثناء اللعب في الخارج.



Tarek's Mother

She is a caring and wise mother who suggests he go outside instead of using screens. Her simple advice leads Tarek to rediscover real-life joy.

والدة طارق أم عطوفة وحكيمة تقترح عليه الخروج للعب بدلاً من استخدام الشاشات. تؤدي نصيحتها البسيطة إلى أن يكتشف طارق متعة الحياة الواقعية من جديد.

Setting الزمان والمكان

The time and place of the story:

زمان ومكان القصة:

- **Time:** A beautiful Friday morning, continuing through the afternoon until sunset.

الزمان: صباح يوم جمعة جميل، واستمر من فترة ما بعد الظهر حتى الغروب.

- **Place:** Tarek's house, his bedroom, the street outside, and the park where he plays with his friends.

المكان: منزل طارق، غرفته، الشارع الخارجي، والحديقة حيث يلعب مع أصدقائه.

The main events in order:

الأحداث الرئيسية بالترتيب:

- ① **A Joyful Morning:** Tarek woke up excited to play his tablet game. The sky was clear, birds were singing, and he felt full of energy. صباح مليء بالفرح: استيقظ طارق متحمسًا للعب على جهازه اللوحي. كانت السماء صافية، والطيور تغني، وكان يشعر بطاقة وحيوية كبيرة.
- ② **No Internet:** He tried to the game, but a "No Internet Connection" message appeared. Tarek felt lonely without Wi-Fi. لا يوجد إنترنت: حاول تشغيل اللعبة، لكن ظهرت رسالة تقول "لا يوجد اتصال بالإنترنت". شعر طارق بالوحدة دون الواي فاي.
- ③ **Mother's Advice:** His mother told him the Internet was down and suggested going outside. At first, Tarek thought it was impossible to have fun without his tablet. نصيحة الأم: أخبرته والدته أن الإنترنت لا يعمل واقترحت عليه الخروج للعب في الخارج. في البداية، اعتقد طارق أنه من المستحيل الاستمتاع بدون جهازه اللوحي.
- ④ **Joining Friends:** Tarek saw Laila, Amir, and Dina playing outside and decided to join them. He stepped into the warm sunshine and felt a cool breeze on his face. الانضمام إلى الأصدقاء: رأى طارق ليلى وأمير ودينا يلعبون في الخارج وقرر الانضمام إليهم. خطا إلى أشعة الشمس الدافئة وشعر بنسيم بارد يمر على وجهه.
- ⑤ **Outdoor/Outside Fun:** Tarek and his friends drew with chalk, rode bikes, and played hide.and.seek together. Tarek laughed so much that he forgot about his tablet and felt very happy. المرح في الخارج: رسم طارق وأصدقاؤه بالطباشير، وركبوا الدراجات، ولعبوا الغمضة معًا. ضحك طارق كثيرًا لدرجة أنه نسي جهازه اللوحي وشعر بسعادة كبيرة.
- ⑥ **Choosing Friendship:** Even when the Wi-Fi returned, Tarek stayed with his friends. He realized that real life fun and friendship were better than screens. اختيار الصداقة: حتى عندما عاد الواي فاي، بقي طارق مع أصدقائه. أدرك طارق أن متعة الحياة الواقعية والصداقة أفضل من الشاشات.

Theme (Moral)

الفكرة الرئيسية (الدرس المستفاد)

The message or lesson of the story:

الرسالة أو الدرس المستفاد من القصة:

- ① Real-life friendship is more valuable and enjoyable than spending all the time on screens.
الصداقة الحقيقية في الحياة الواقعية أكثر قيمة ومتعة من قضاء كل الوقت أمام الشاشات.
- ② Outside activities and playing with friends bring happiness, laughter, and energy.
الأنشطة الخارجية واللعب مع الأصدقاء تجلب السعادة والضحك والحيوية.
- ③ Technology is fun, but it should not replace the joy of spending time with people we love.
التكنولوجيا ممتعة، لكنها لا يجب أن تحل محل متعة قضاء الوقت مع الأشخاص الذين نحبهم.

Picture Dictionary

القاموس المصور



tablet

جهاز لوحي - تابلت



sidewalk

رصيف



bored

يشعر بالملل



chalk

طباشير



sticks

عصي - أعواد



sunset

غروب الشمس



Definitions تعريفات

tablet	a small flat computer you can hold in your hands, like an
iPad	Wi-Fi wireless internet connection
level	a stage in a game or activity where you must complete tasks to move forward
excited	very happy and full of energy
bored	not interested or having nothing to do
lonely	feeling sad because you are alone
rode	to sit and move on a bike
called out	to shout so someone can hear you
whispered	to speak very softly
breeze	a light, gentle wind
sidewalk	the path beside a road where people walk
chalk	a soft white or colored stick used for writing or drawing

Part 1



Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية

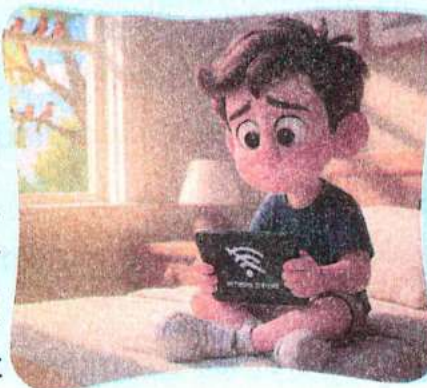
grab	يُمسك	call out	يُنَادِي
proudly	بفخر	sigh	يَتَنَهَّد
press	يَضْط	Wi-Fi	الواي فاي / شبكة الإنترنت اللاسلكية
power button	زر التشغيل	clear	صافي / واضح
pop up	يظهر فجأة	connection	اتصال
frown	يعبس بوجهه	still	لا يزال / ما زال

Important Phrases

عبارات هامة

jumped out of bed	قفز من على السرير	pressed the power button	ضغط زر التشغيل
smiled proudly	ابتسم بفخر	grabbed his tablet	أمسك بجهازه اللوحي
No Internet Connection!	لا يوجد اتصال بالإنترنت!	The internet is down today.	الإنترنت معطل اليوم.
still nothing	لا شيء حتى الآن.	walked in with a smile	دخل مبتسمًا

It was a beautiful Friday morning. The sky was clear and blue, and the birds were singing in the trees. Tarek jumped out of bed, grabbed his tablet, and smiled. "Today I'll reach level 20!" he said proudly. He pressed the power button. The game started, but when he tried to play, a message popped up: "No Internet Connection!"



كان صباح يوم جمعة جميل. كانت السماء صافية وزرقاء، وكانت الطيور تغني على الأشجار. قفز طارق من على السرير، أمسك بجهازه اللوحي، ابتسم وقال بفخر: "اليوم سأصل إلى المستوى 20!" ضغط زر التشغيل، وبدأت اللعبة، لكن عندما حاول اللعب، ظهرت رسالة تقول: "لا يوجد اتصال بالإنترنت!"



Tarek frowned and tried again. Still nothing.

"Mom! The Wi-Fi isn't working!" he called out. His mother walked in with a smile. "The Internet is down today. Maybe you can find something fun to do outside." Tarek sighed. "Fun? Without Wi-Fi? Impossible!"

عبس طارق وحاول مجددًا. لا جدوى. نادى قائلاً: "أمي! الإنترنت لا يعمل!". دخلت والدته مبتسمة. "الإنترنت معطل اليوم. ربما تجد شيئًا ممتعًا لتفعله في الخارج." تنهد طارق وقال «متعة؟ بدون الواي فاي؟ مستحيل!».

Questions and Answers

Answer the following questions:

1. What day of the week was it in the story?

أي يوم من أيام الأسبوع ورد ذكره في القصة؟
كان يوم الجمعة.

► It was Friday.

2. How was the weather that morning?

كيف كان الطقس في ذلك الصباح؟

► The sky was clear and blue, and the birds were singing.

كانت السماء صافية وزرقاء، وكانت الطيور تغني.

3. What is the first thing did Tarek do in the morning?

ما هو أول شيء فعله طارق في الصباح؟

► He wanted to play his tablet game and reach level 20.

أراد أن يلعب لعبته على الجهاز اللوحي ويصل إلى المستوى 20.

4. What happened when Tarek tried to play the game?

ماذا حدث عندما حاول طارق لعب اللعبة؟

▶ A message popped up saying "No Internet Connection!"

ظهرت فجأة رسالة تقول "لا يوجد اتصال بالإنترنت!"

5. How did Tarek feel when the Wi-Fi wasn't working?

كيف شعر طارق عندما لم يعمل الواي فاي؟

▶ He frowned, and tried again.

عبس وحاول مرة أخرى.

6. What did Tarek's mother suggest he do?

ماذا اقترحت والدته طارق عليه ان يفعل؟

▶ She suggested he find something fun to do outside.

اقترحت عليه أن يجد شيئًا ممتعًا ليفعله في الخارج.

7. How did Tarek react to his mother's suggestion?

كيف كان رد فعل طارق على اقتراح والدته؟

▶ He sighed and said, "Fun? Without Wi-Fi? Impossible!"

تنهد وقال: "متعة؟ بدون الواي فاي؟ مستحيل!"

Exercises on Part 1

1

1 Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1. Tarek jumped out of bed and grabbed his book. (.....)
2. Tarek wanted to reach level 20 in his tablet game. (.....)
3. The Wi-Fi was working that morning. (.....)
4. Tarek was happy when his mother suggested he go outside. (.....)
5. Tarek frowned and tried to play the game again. (.....)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Tarek jumped out of bed, grabbed his, and smiled.

- a) book b) tablet c) toy d) pencil

2. "Today I'll reach!" he said proudly.
 a) level 10 b) level 15 c) level 20 d) level 25
3. "Mom! The Wi-Fi isn't!" Tarek called out.
 a) working b) charged c) safe d) broken
4. His mother suggested he find something fun to do
 a) inside b) outside c) online d) in his room
5. Tarek sighed and said, "Fun? Without Wi-Fi?!"
 a) Amazing b) Exciting c) Possible d) Impossible

3 Read and complete the text with words in the box:

outside - button - fun - Connection - tablet

It was a beautiful Friday morning. Tarek jumped out of bed, grabbed his
 ①, and smiled proudly. He pressed the power ②,
 but a message popped up: "No Internet ③!" He frowned. "Mom!
 The Wi-Fi isn't working!" His mother suggested he play ④,
 but Tarek was very sad.

4 Answer the following questions:

1. What did Tarek grab when he jumped out of bed?

▶

2. What level did Tarek hope to reach in his game?

▶

3. What appeared on the screen when he tried to play?

▶

4. How did Tarek try to fix the problem?

▶

5. What did Tarek say about having fun without Wi-Fi?

▶

Part 2



Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية

silent	صامت	screen	شاشة
empty	فارغ	minutes	دقائق
interesting	ممتع / شيق	quiet	هادئ
laugh	يضحك	shake	يهز
busy	مشغول	miss	يفتقد
lonely	وحيد / يشعر بالوحدة	softly	بهدوء / بصوت خافت

Important Phrases

عبارات هامة

The room felt empty and quiet.	missed laughing	افتقد الضحك
كانت الغرفة تُشعرُ بالفراغ والهدوء.		
started feeling lonely	not interesting anymore	لم تعد ممتعة
بدأ يشعر بالوحدة		
after a while	Come outside!	تعال إلى الخارج!
بعد فترة		
shook his head	for a few minutes	لبضع دقائق
هز رأسه		

He sat on his bed, looking at his silent tablet. The room felt empty and quiet. He tried watching old videos, but they weren't interesting anymore. Out the window, he saw Laila, Amir, and Dina laughing and running around with their bikes. Laila called: "Hey, Tarek! Come outside! We're going to the park!"



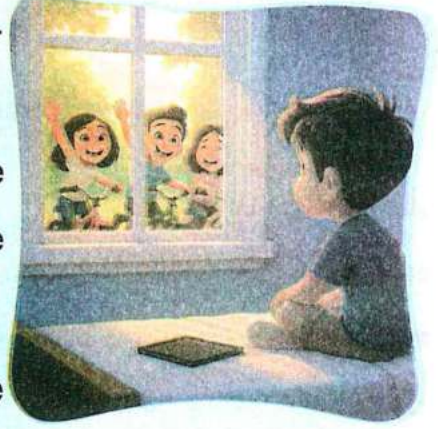
جلس طارق على سريرهِ، ينظر إلى جهازه اللوحي الصامت. كانت الغرفة تُشعرُ بالفراغ والهدوء. حاول مشاهدة مقاطع الفيديو القديمة، لكنها لم تعد ممتعة. من النافذة، رأى ليلي وأمير ودينا يضحكون ويركضون بالدراجات الخاصة بهم.

نادته ليلي: "مرحبًا يا طارق! تعال إلى الخارج! نحن ذاهبون إلى الحديقة!"

Tarek shook his head. "No thanks! I'm... uh... busy!"

But after a while, he started feeling lonely. He missed laughing and talking with his friends. The tablet was just a silent screen now.

He looked at it again and said softly, "Maybe I'll just go for a few minutes."



هز طارق رأسه. "لا شكرًا! أنا... آه... مشغول!"
ولكن بعد فترة، بدأ يشعر بالوحدة. افتقد الضحك والحديث مع أصدقائه. أصبح الجهاز اللوحي مجرد شاشة صامتة الآن. نظر إليه مرة أخرى وقال بهدوء:
"ربما سأخرج لبضع دقائق فقط."

Questions and Answers

Answer the following questions:

1. What was Tarek looking at while sitting on his bed?

ما الذي كان طارق ينظر إليه أثناء جلوسه على سريره؟

► He was looking at his silent tablet.

كان ينظر إلى جهازه اللوحي الصامت.

2. How did the room feel when Tarek was sitting inside?

كيف اشعرت الغرفة طارق عندما كان جالسًا في الداخل؟

► The room felt empty and quiet.

كانت الغرفة تُشعرُ بالفراغ والهدوء.

3. What did Tarek try to do, but found uninteresting?

ماذا حاول طارق فعله لكنه وجدته غير ممتع؟

► He tried watching old videos.

حاول مشاهدة مقاطع الفيديو القديمة.

4. Who did Tarek see outside the window?

من راه طارق خارج النافذة؟

▶ He saw Laila, Amir, and Dina laughing and running around with their bikes.

رأى ليلي وأمير ودينا يضحكون ويركضون بدراجاتهم.

5. What did Tarek miss while sitting alone?

ماذا افتقد طارق أثناء جلوسه وحده؟

▶ He missed laughing and talking with his friends.

افتقد الضحك والحديث مع أصدقائه.

6. What did Tarek finally decide to do after feeling lonely?

ماذا قرر طارق في النهاية فعله بعد أن شعر بالوحدة؟

▶ He decided to go outside for a few minutes.

قرر الخروج لبضع دقائق.

7. How long did Tarek decide to go outside at first?

كم المدة التي قررها طارق للخروج في البداية؟

▶ He decided to go outside for a few minutes.

قرر أن يخرج لبضع دقائق.

Exercises on Part 2

1 Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1. The room felt full of noise and excitement. (.....)
2. Tarek was looking at his silent tablet. (.....)
3. He saw Laila, Amir, and Dina sleeping outside. (.....)
4. Tarek quickly ran outside without thinking. (.....)
5. Tarek finally decided to go outside for a few minutes. (.....)

2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Tarek sat on his, looking at his silent tablet.
a) chair b) bed c) floor d) desk
2. He tried watching, but they weren't interesting anymore.
a) new videos b) movies c) cartoons d) old videos
3. Out the window, he saw Laila, Amir, and Dina with their bikes.
a) sleeping b) reading
c) laughing and running around d) sitting
4. After a while, he started feeling
a) happy b) lonely c) excited d) sleepy
5. The tablet was just a screen now.
a) silent b) bright c) broken d) small

3

Read and complete the text with words in the box:

bikes - trees - empty - minutes - interesting

Tarek sat on his bed, looking at his silent tablet. The room felt

- ① and quiet. He tried watching old videos, but they weren't
- ② Outside, he saw Laila, Amir, and Dina playing with their
- ③ Feeling lonely, he missed his friends. He decided softly to go outside for a few ④

4

Answer the following questions:

1. What were Laila, Amir, and Dina doing outside?
▶

2. How did Tarek feel after a while?
▶

3. How did Tarek respond when Laila called him to go outside?



4. How did Tarek describe his tablet at that moment?



5. What did Tarek say softly before going outside?



Part 3



Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية

step	يخطو	warm	دافئ
sunshine	أشعة الشمس	breeze	نسيم
blow	يهبّ	wave	يلوّح
piece	قطعة	giant	عملاق / كبير جدًا
shout	يصرخ	race	سباق
ride	يركب	hide-and-seek	لعبة الغميضة/الاستغماية
pretend	يتخيل/يتظاهر	leaves	أوراق الشجر
stomach	معدة / بطن	forget	ينسى

Important Phrases

عبارات هامة

stepped outside

خطا إلى الخارج

laughing the whole way

يضحكون طوال الطريق

drawing on the sidewalk

الرسم على الرصيف

race to the park

سباق إلى الحديقة

handed him

ناولته

Want to help?

هل تريد المساعدة؟

When he stepped outside, the warm sunshine touched his face, and a cool breeze blew through his hair. Laila smiled and waved.

"You came! We're drawing on the sidewalk. Want to help?"

She handed him a piece of colorful chalk. Together, they drew a giant smiling sun, a tall castle, and even a rocket ship.



عندما أخذ طارق خطوات إلى الخارج، لامست أشعة الشمس الدافئة وجهه، وهبَّ نسيم لطيف عبر شعره. ابتسمت ليلي ولوّحت له. قالت: "لقد أتيت! نحن نرسم على الرصيف. هل تريد أن تُساعد؟" ناولته قطعة من الطباشير الملوّن. معًا، رسموا شمسًا ضخمة، وقلعة طويلة، وحتى سفينة صاروخية.

Then Amir shouted, "Let's race to the park!"

They rode their bikes, laughing the whole way. At the park, they played hide-and-seek, and built a pretend shop with leaves and sticks. Tarek laughed so much his stomach hurt. "I forgot how much fun this is!" he said happily.

ثم صاح أمير: "هيا تتسابق إلى الحديقة!" قادوا دراجاتهم وهم يضحكون طوال الطريق. وفي الحديقة، لعبوا الغميضة، وبنوا متجرًا تخيليًا باستخدام أوراق الشجر والعصي. ضحك طارق كثيرًا حتى تألم بطنه. وقال بسعادة: "لقد نسيت كم يكون هذا ممتعًا!"

Questions and Answers

Answer the following questions:

1. What touched Tarek's face when he stepped outside?

ما الذي لامس وجه طارق عندما خرج؟

▶ The warm sunshine touched his face. لامست أشعة الشمس الدافئة وجهه.

2. What were the children drawing on the sidewalk?

ماذا كان الأطفال يرسمون على الرصيف؟

▶ They drew a giant smiling sun, a tall castle, and a rocket ship.

رسموا شمسًا ضخمة مبتسمة، وقلعة طويلة، وحتى سفينة صاروخية.

3. What did Laila hand Tarek? ماذا أعطت ليلي لطارق؟
 ▶ She handed him a piece of colorful chalk.. أعطته قطعة من الطباشير الملون.
4. What did Amir shout before they left for the park? بماذا صاح أمير قبل أن يذهبوا إلى الحديقة؟
 ▶ He shouted, "Let's race to the park!" صاح قائلاً: "هيا تتسابق إلى الحديقة!"
5. How did the children go to the park? كيف ذهب الأطفال إلى الحديقة؟
 ▶ They rode their bikes. ركبوا دراجاتهم.
6. What games did they play at the park? ما الألعاب التي لعبوها في الحديقة؟
 ▶ They played hide-and-seek! and built a pretend shop. لعبوا الغمّضة وبنوا متجرًا تخيليًا.
7. Why did Tarek's stomach hurt? لماذا تألم بطن طارق؟
 ▶ His stomach hurt because he laughed so much. تألم بطنه لأنه ضحك كثيرًا.
8. What did Tarek realize at the end? ماذا أدرك طارق في النهاية؟
 ▶ He realized how much fun he had forgotten. أدرك كم كان قد نسي مقدار المرح الذي يمكنه الاستمتاع به.

Exercises on Part 3

1 Read and write T (True) or F (False):

- Laila was drawing alone on the sidewalk when Tarek arrived. (.....)
- Tarek used a piece of colorful chalk to draw with his friends. (.....)
- Amir asked them to walk slowly to the park. (.....)
- They built a pretend shop using leaves and sticks. (.....)
- Tarek's stomach hurt because he was tired from running. (.....)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- A cool breeze through Tarek's hair.
 a) fell b) blew c) broke d) jumped

2. Laila said they were drawing on the
 a) road b) wall c) sidewalk d) roof
3. They drew a giant smiling sun, a tall castle, and a
 a) rocket ship b) car c) mountain d) boat
4. At the park, they played
 a) football b) hide-and-seek! c) tennis d) cards
5. The children rode their to the park.
 a) buses b) horses c) scooters d) bikes

3 Read and complete the text with words in the box:

fun - waved - games - racing - sidewalk

Tarek stepped outside and felt the warm sunshine on his face as a cool breeze blew through his hair. Laila ① and invited him to draw on the ② and made colorful pictures. then Amir suggested ③ to the park. They played games, laughed together, and Tarek remembered how ④ real play was.

4 Answer the following questions:

1. Who waved at Tarek when he stepped outside?
 ▶
2. What did the children use to draw on the sidewalk?
 ▶
3. What did they build at the park?
 ▶
4. How did Tarek feel while riding his bike with friends?
 ▶
5. What did Tarek say about playing outside?
 ▶

Part 4



Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية

later	لاحقًا / بعد قليل	covered	مغطى / مغطاة
dust	غبار	think	يفكر
second	ثانية	inside	في الداخل / بالداخل
round	جولة / دورة	wait	ينتظر / ينتظر
louder	بصوت أعلى / أعلى صوتًا	stop	يتوقف

Important Phrases

عبارات هامة

The Wi-Fi is back!

عاد الواي فاي!

covered in chalk dust

مُغطى بغبار الطباشير

smiling from ear to ear

يبتسم ابتسامة عريضة

He thought for a second.

فكر للحظة

The Wi-Fi can wait!

يمكن أن ينتظر الواي فاي!

laughing louder than ever

يضحك بصوت أعلى من أي وقت مضى

Later that afternoon, Tarek's mom called from the house, "Tarek! The Wi-Fi is back!" He stopped and looked at his friends. They were all covered in chalk dust and smiling from ear to ear.



في وقت لاحق بعد ظهر ذلك اليوم، نادى والد طارق من داخل المنزل:

"طارق! عاد الواي فاي!" توقف طارق ونظر إلى أصدقائه. كانوا

جميعًا مغطيين بغبار الطباشير وابتسمون ابتسامة عريضة.

He thought for a second. Should he run back inside and play his game? Then Dina said, "Come on, Tarek! One more round of hide-and-seek!" Tarek smiled. "The Wi-Fi can wait!"

And off he ran, laughing louder than ever.

فكر طارق لثانية. هل يجب أن يعود إلى الداخل ويلعب لعبته؟ ثم قالت دينا: "هيا يا طارق! جولة أخرى من الغمضة!" ابتسم طارق وقال: "يمكن أن ينتظر الواي فاي!" وانطلق جاريًا، ضاحكًا بصوت أعلى من أي وقت مضى.



Questions and Answers

Answer the following questions:

1. Who called Tarek from the house?

► Tarek's mom called from the house.

من نادى طارق من داخل المنزل؟

نادت والدته طارق من داخل المنزل.

2. What did Tarek's mom say?

► She said, "Tarek! The Wi-Fi is back!"

ماذا قالت والدته طارق؟

قالت: "طارق! عاد الواي فاي!"

3. How did Tarek's friends look when he saw them?

► They were covered in chalk dust and smiling from ear to ear.

كيف بدا أصدقاء طارق عندما رآهم؟

كانوا مغطين بغبار الطباشير وابتسمون ابتسامة عريضة.

4. What did Tarek think about for a second?

► He thought about if he should run back inside and play his game.

بماذا فكر طارق للحظة؟

فكر فيما إذا كان يجب أن يعود إلى الداخل ويلعب لعبته.

5. What did Dina say to Tarek?

ماذا قالت دينا لطارق؟

► She said, "Come on, Tarek! One more round of hide-and-seek!"

قالت: "هيا يا طارق! جولة أخرى من الغمضة!"

6. What did Tarek decide about the Wi-Fi?

ماذا قرر طارق بشأن الواي فاي؟

► He said, "The Wi-Fi can wait!"

قال: "يمكن أن ينتظر الواي فاي!"

7. How did Tarek run after making his decision?

كيف ركض طارق بعد اتخاذ قراره؟

► He ran off, laughing louder than ever.

انطلق جاريًا، ضاحكًا بصوت أعلى من أي وقت مضى.

Exercises on Part

4

1 Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1. Tarek's friends were covered in paint. (.....)
2. Dina invited Tarek for one more round of hide-and-seek! (.....)
3. Tarek decided to stop playing with his friends and go inside. (.....)
4. Tarek thought the Wi-Fi could wait. (.....)
5. Tarek ran off, laughing louder than ever. (.....)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Later that afternoon, Tarek's mom called from the house, ".....!"
 - a) Tarek! The Wi-Fi is back!
 - b) The game is over
 - c) Come eat lunch
 - d) Time to sleep
2. Tarek smiled and said, ".....!"
 - a) I need my tablet
 - b) The Wi-Fi can wait!
 - c) I'm going home
 - d) Let's eat first

3. Tarek stopped and looked at his friends. They were all
 a) tired and hungry b) sitting quietly
 c) covered in chalk dust d) reading books
4. Tarek ran off, louder than ever.
 a) crying b) laughing c) walking d) shouting
5. Tarek's decision showed that he
 a) wanted to play inside b) was upset
 c) was tired of games d) enjoyed with his friends

3 Read and complete the text with words in the box:

round - eat - thought - happily - chalk

Later that afternoon, Tarek's mom called from the house, "Tarek! The Wi-Fi is back!" He looked at his friends, covered in ① dust and smiling. He ② for a moment but decided to stay. Dina invited him for one more ③ of hide-and-seek. Tarek laughed and ran outside ④

4 Answer the following questions:

1. Why did Tarek stop when he heard his mom call?

▶

2. How did Tarek's friends look when he saw them?

▶

3. How did Tarek feel when he thought for a second?

▶

4. What made Tarek finally decide to stay outside?

▶

5. How did Tarek feel as he ran off to play?

▶

Part 5



Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية

real life	الحياة الحقيقية/الواقعية	whisper	يهمس
shelf	رف	minimal	قليل / ضئيل
still	ما زال / لا يزال	important	مهم
spend	يقضي	joy	فرح / سعادة
replace	يستبدل / يحل محل	friendship	صداقة

Important Phrases

عبارات هامة

the best day ever

أفضل يوم على الإطلاق

I think real life is more fun.

أعتقد أن الحياة الحقيقية أكثر متعة.

placed his on the shelf

وضع على الرف

the minimal use

الاستخدام القليل / الضئيل

I didn't even miss

لم افتقد حتى

the joy of friendship

فرحة الصداقة

At sunset, the four friends sat under the big tree, watching the sky turn orange and pink. Laila said, "This was the best day ever."

Tarek smiled and nodded. "You know what? I didn't even miss my tablet. I think real life is more fun."



عند غروب الشمس، جلس الأصدقاء الأربعة تحت الشجرة الكبيرة، يشاهدون السماء وهي تتحول إلى اللونين البرتقالي والوردي. قالت ليلي: "لقد كان هذا أفضل يوم على الإطلاق." ابتسم طارق وأوماً برأسه قائلاً: "أتعلمون؟ لم افتقد لجهازي اللوحي. أعتقد أن الحياة الحقيقية أكثر متعة."

When he went to bed that night, he placed his tablet on the shelf and whispered, "You're fun, but my friends are even more fun."

From that day on, Tarek still used his tablet—but only at the minimal use after he spent time with his friends. Because he learned something important: No tablet, phone, or screen can ever replace the joy of friendship.



عندما ذهب إلى الفراش تلك الليلة، وضع طارق جهازه اللوحي على الرف وهمس قائلاً:
"أنت ممتع، لكن أصدقائي أكثر متعة."
ومن ذلك اليوم فصاعداً، ظل طارق يستخدم جهازه اللوحي – ولكن فقط استخداماً قليلاً بعد أن يقضي
وقتاً مع أصدقائه. لأنه تعلّم شيئاً مهماً:
لا يمكن لأي جهاز لوحي أو هاتف أو شاشة أن تحل محل فرحة الصداقة.

Questions and Answers

Answer the following questions:

1. Where did the four friends sit at sunset?

أين جلس الأصدقاء الأربعة عند الغروب؟

► They sat under the big tree.

جلس الأصدقاء الأربعة تحت الشجرة الكبيرة عند الغروب.

2. What did the friends watch while sitting under the tree?

ماذا شاهد الأصدقاء أثناء جلوسهم تحت الشجرة؟

► They watched the sky turn orange and pink.

شاهدوا السماء وهي تتحول إلى اللونين البرتقالي والوردي.

3. What did Laila say about the day?

ماذا قالت ليلي عن هذا اليوم؟

► She said, "This was the best day ever."

قالت: "لقد كان هذا أفضل يوم على الإطلاق."

4. What did Tarek do with his tablet before going to bed?

ماذا فعل طارق بجهازه اللوحي قبل الذهاب إلى الفراش؟

- He placed it on the shelf and whispered to it "You're fun, but my friends are even more fun."

وضعه على الرف وهمس له. "أنت ممتع، لكن أصدقائي أكثر متعة."

5. How did Tarek use his tablet after that day?

كيف استخدم طارق جهازه اللوحي بعد ذلك اليوم؟

- He used it only minimally after spending time with his friends.

استخدمه قليلاً فقط بعد قضاء وقت مع أصدقائه.

6. What important lesson did Tarek learn?

ما الدرس المهم الذي تعلمه طارق؟

- No tablet, phone, or screen can replace the joy of friendship.

تعلم أنه لا يمكن لأي جهاز لوحي أو هاتف أو شاشة أن تحل محل فرحة الصداقة.

Exercises on Part 5

1 Read and write T (True) or F (False):

- Tarek and his friends sat under a small tree at sunrise. (.....)
- Laila said, "This was the worst day ever." (.....)
- Tarek missed his tablet a lot while sitting under the tree. (.....)
- Tarek placed his tablet on the shelf before going to bed. (.....)
- He learned that no tablet, phone, or screen can replace the joy of friendship. (.....)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- They watched the sky turn and pink.
a) yellow b) green c) blue d) orange
- Tarek said he didn't even miss his
a) friends b) tablet c) bike d) game

3. Tarek whispered, "You're fun, but my are even more fun."

- a) games b) books c) friends d) toys

4. From that day on, Tarek used his tablet only at

- a) full power b) minimal use c) night time d) school

5. Tarek thought real life is more than screens.

- a) fun b) boring c) sad d) easy

3

Read and complete the text with words in the box:

fun - waved - games - racing - sidewalk

At sunset, Tarek and his friends sat under the big tree, watching the sky turn orange and pink. Laila said it was the ① day ever. Tarek smiled, placed his ② on the shelf, and realized that ③ life and friendship are more fun than screens. He used his tablet at the ④ use.

4

Answer the following questions:

1. How did Tarek feel about his tablet at the end of the day?

▶

2. What did Tarek whisper to his tablet?

▶

3. How did Tarek use his tablet after that day?

▶

4. How did Tarek react when Laila said it was the best day ever?

▶

5. What lesson about screens and friendship did Tarek learn?

▶

Student Book Questions

Student's
Book

1 Choose the correct answer:

1. What happened at the beginning of the story?
 - a) Tarek's friends came to visit him.
 - b) Tarek's Wi-Fi stopped working.
 - c) Tarek went to the park.
 - d) Tarek lost his tablet.
2. Why did Tarek feel bored?
 - a) His friends didn't want to play with him.
 - b) His tablet was broken.
 - c) The Wi-Fi was not working, so he couldn't play online.
 - d) He had too much homework.
3. What did Tarek and his friends do outside?
 - a) Played video games
 - b) Watched a movie
 - c) Drew pictures with chalk and rode their bikes
 - d) Built a sandcastle
4. When the Wi-Fi came back, what did Tarek decide to do?
 - a) Go back home and play his game
 - b) Keep playing with his friends
 - c) Watch TV
 - d) Tell his mom to turn it off again
5. What lesson did Tarek learn at the end?
 - a) Wi-Fi is more important than school.
 - b) Friends are more fun than screens.
 - c) Drawing is boring.
 - d) He should buy a new tablet.

2 Write the numbers 5–1 to show the correct order of the events:

- ☐ Tarek's mom told him that the Wi-Fi wasn't working.
- ☐ Tarek went outside and had fun playing with his friends.
- ☐ Tarek woke up excited to play on his tablet.

- ☐ Tarek's mom said the Wi-Fi was back, but he chose to stay and play.
- ☐ At night, Tarek realized that friends are more fun than screens.

3 Write T (True) or F (False):

1. Tarek was excited to play his favorite game on his tablet in the morning. (.....)
2. The Wi-Fi stopped working in Tarek's house (.....)
3. Tarek and his friends had fun drawing with chalk and riding their bikes. (.....)
4. When the Wi-Fi came back, Tarek ran home immediately to play online. (.....)
5. At the end, Tarek decided that screens are more fun than friends. (.....)

4 Match the word with its definition:

1. seat rode

a) Not interested or having nothing to do

2. Whispered

b) To shout so someone can hear you

3. bored

c) To speak very softly

4. sidewalk

d) To sit and move on a bike

5. called out

e) The path beside a road where people walk

5 Answer the following questions:

1. Main Characters:
2. Setting (where and when it happens):
3. Problem (what goes wrong):
4. Solution (how it was fixed):

5. Ending:

6. Moral (lesson learned):

6 Read the story summary below and fill in the blanks using the correct words from the box:

friends - tablet - Wi-Fi - bored - outside - fun - lesson

Tarek was very excited to play on his ① On Friday morning, he grabbed his tablet, but the ② stopped working. At first, he felt ③ and didn't know what to do. Then he looked out the window and saw his ④ playing ⑤ He decided to join them, and together they laughed and had so much ⑥

At the end of the day, Tarek learned an important ⑦ that real friendship is better than any screen.

7 Think and Write:

► Why do you think Tarek was happier playing with his friends than using his tablet?

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Unit 6

8 Answer the following questions:

1. Why do you think Tarek was upset when the Wi-Fi stopped working?
▶
2. What made Tarek change his mind and go outside?
▶
3. How do you think Tarek felt while playing with his friends? Explain why.
▶
4. What do you think was the happiest moment in the story? Why?
▶
5. How do friends make our lives better than screens do?
▶

9

Imagine you are Tarek's friend. Write a short letter to him after reading the story. Tell him what you think about what happened, how he felt, and give him advice about spending time with friends:

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

The Story Answers

Exercises on Part 1

1. Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1. F 2. T 3. F
4. F 5. T

2. Choose the correct answer:

1. (b) tablet 2. (c) level 20
3. (a) working 4. (b) outside
5. (d) Impossible

3. Read and complete the text:

1. tablet 2. button
3. Connection 4. outside

4. Answer the following questions:

1. His tablet
2. Level 20
3. "No Internet Connection!"
4. He tried again.
5. Impossible

Exercises on Part 2

1. Read and write T F

1. F 2. T 3. F
4. F 5. T

2. Choose the correct answer:

1. (b) bed
2. (d) old videos
3. (c) laughing and running around
4. (b) lonely
5. (a) silent

3. Read and complete the text:

1. empty 2. interesting
3. bikes 4. minutes

4. Answer the following questions:

1. They were laughing and running around with their bikes.
2. He felt lonely.

Exercises on Part 3

1. Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1. F 2. T 3. F
4. T 5. F

2. Choose the correct answer:

1. (b) blew 2. (c) sidewalk
3. (a) rocket ship 4. (b) hide-and-seek!
5. (b) bikes

3. Read and complete the text:

1. waved 2. sidewalk
3. racing 4. fun

4. Answer the following questions:

1. Leila 2. Colorful chalk
3. A pretend shop 4. He was smiling.
5. It is fun

Exercises on Part 4

1. Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1. F 2. T 3. F
4. T 5. T

2. Choose the correct answer:

1. (a) Tarek! The Wi-Fi is back!
2. (b) The Wi-Fi can wait!
3. (c) covered in chalk dust
4. (b) laughing
5. (d) enjoyed with his friends

3. Read and complete the text:

1. chalk 2. thought
3. round 4. happily

4. Answer the following questions:

1. Because his mom said, "Tarek! The Wi-Fi is back!"

2. They were covered in chalk dust.
3. He felt confused
4. He was happy with his friends.
5. He ran off, laughing louder than ever.

Exercises on Part 5

1. Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1. F 2. F 3. F
4. T 5. T

2. Choose the correct answer:

1. (D) orange 2. (b) tablet
3. (c) friends 4. (b) minimal use
5. (A) fun

3. Read and complete the text:

1. best 2. tablet
3. real 4. minimal

4. Answer the following questions:

1. He didn't even miss his tablet
2. He whispered to it "You're fun, but my friends are even more fun.
3. At the minimal use
4. He smiled.
5. Real life and friendship are more fun than screens.

S.D

1. Choose the correct answer:

1. (b) Tarek's Wi-Fi stopped working.
2. (c) The Wi-Fi was not working, so he couldn't play online.
3. (c) Drew pictures with chalk and rode their bikes
4. (b) Keep playing with his friends
5. (b) Friends are more fun than screens.

2. Write the numbers 1-5 to show the correct order of the events

1. (2) Tarek's mom told him that the Wi-Fi wasn't working.

2. (3) Tarek went outside and had fun playing with his friends.

3. (1) Tarek woke up excited to play on his tablet

4. (4) Tarek's mom said the Wi-Fi was back, but he chose to stay and play.

5. (5) At night, Tarek realized that friends are more fun than screens.

3. Read and write T F

1. T 2. T 3. T
4. F 5. F

4. Match the word with its definition:

1. (d) 2. (c) 3. (a)
4. (e) 5. (b)

5. Answer the following questions:

1. **Main Characters:** Tarek and his friends
2. **Setting:** Tarek's house, the street, and the park- On Friday morning
3. **Problem:** No Internet Connection
4. **Solution:** Doing activities outside
5. **Ending:** Tarek used his tablet at the minimal use.
6. **Moral:** Friends are more fun than screens

6. Read and complete the text:

1. tablet 2. Wi-Fi 3. bored
4. friends 5. outside 6. fun
7. lesson

7. Answer the following questions:

1. Because he wanted to play games on his tablet.
2. The Wi-Fi stopped working.
3. He was happy because he had real fun.
4. I think while they were racing to the park because they laughed a lot.
5. They make us happy and give us fun in the real life.

Part
2

Listening Scripts

Test 1 on Unit 1

خاص بالأزهر الشريف

Manar loves hobbies that make her free time fun. She enjoys drawing, painting, and writing stories. When she was younger, she couldn't do these activities well, but now she can. Manar also likes running, skating, and playing outside. Hobbies help her learn new skills, stay strong, and feel happy every day.

Test 2 on Unit 1

Laila enjoys different hobbies in her free time because they make her happy. She likes solving puzzles and playing board games with her family. These hobbies help her think better and work with others. Laila also enjoys cycling and skating to stay healthy and strong. When she was younger, she couldn't draw well, but now she can paint and write stories with confidence.

Test 3 on Unit 2

خاص بالأزهر الشريف

At our school, there's a big first aid kit in the nurse's room. It has everything we might need for small accidents. Inside, there are bandages, plasters, scissors, and medicine for cuts and bruises. The first aid kit helps everyone stay safe at school.

Test 4 on Unit 2

At the clinic, a friendly receptionist asked for Adam's name. The nurse let Adam enter the examination room. Then, the doctor examined Adam and explained the reason for his sickness. The doctor gave him medicine and told him to drink plenty of water and rest. The doctor told him to stop eating ice cream.

Test 5 on Unit 3

خاص بالأزهر الشريف

Mr. Maged and his family are going to travel to Egypt! They packed light outfits, hats and sunglasses for the hot weather. They are going to see the Great Pyramids of Giza and the tombs of ancient Egyptian kings.

Test 6 on Unit 3

Next weekend, our class is going to travel to the beautiful Wadi El Gemal Park for a school camping trip. We are going to pack our suitcases with warm clothes, a torch, and a water bottle. Our teacher told us those who want to go on the trip, they need to receive their bus tickets today. She said the campsite is going to be crowded.

Revision 7 on Units 1-2-3

خاص بالأزهر الشريف

Ali loves hobbies that make his free time special. He enjoys board games, puzzles, and drawing. These activities help him relax, think better, and be creative. When Ali cycles or skates, he feels strong and happy. As he grows, his skills improve every day with practice, patience, and teamwork skills.

Revision 8 on Units 1-2-3

Maya is excited about the Hobby Talent Show class next week. She will show her drawing and painting skills and do some paper crafting. On weekends, she loves cycling and skating in the park. Maya enjoys sharing her hobbies with friends. She thinks the talent show will be fun and hopes everyone will enjoy seeing and learning about each other's hobbies.


Test 9 on Unit 4

خاص بالأزهر الشريف

Omar and his family are visiting his uncle's farm today. They see many animal helpers working hard. The farmer is milking a cow now. Cows give us fresh milk every day for drinking and making cheese.


Test 10 on Unit 4

In my country, many animals work hard to help people in their daily lives. On farms, strong water buffaloes pull ploughs through the fields. Right now, a farmer is working with his water buffalo to prepare the soil for planting crops. Donkeys carry heavy loads through villages and to markets. They transport crops, water containers, and supplies through narrow streets.


Test 11 on Unit 5

خاص بالأزهر الشريف

Sara Sabry is the first Egyptian female astronaut. She became the first Arab engineer to travel into space in 2022. She studied the solar system and planets.


Test 12 on Unit 5

Nada and Adam were classmates in science class. Their teacher asked them to make a classroom poster about the planets. Together, they worked hard. Nada colored Mars red and added rings to Saturn. Adam wrote facts: "Jupiter is the largest planet. Neptune is the farthest."

When they finished, the planet poster was bright and clear. The teacher smiled. "Great teamwork!"


Revision 13 on Units 4 - 5

خاص بالأزهر الشريف

In Egypt, many animals help people every day. Water buffaloes pull ploughs on farms to prepare the soil. Donkeys carry heavy loads, like crops and water, through villages and markets. Pigeons deliver notes and letters between places. These animals work hard and know their tasks very well, helping people live more easily.


Revision 14 on Units 4 - 5

Hadeer and her family are visiting her uncle's farm today. They see many animal helpers working hard. The cows are in the field. "Look! The farmer is milking a cow now," says Hadeer happily. Cows give fresh milk every day. They walk to another field where sheep are eating grass. A smart dog is guarding the sheep to keep them safe.

ENGLISH

5th Prim.
2026
SECOND TERM



By a group of specialists

**Evaluations, Units Revision,
Exams, & Answers Key**

Contents

Pages

Part 1

Revision on Unit (1)

3

Revision on Unit (2)

10

Revision on Unit (3)

19

Revision on Unit (4)

27

Revision on Unit (5)

34

Part 2

Weekly Evaluations

43

Part 3

General Tests

53

Part 4

Listening Scripts

85

Part 5

Answers Key

87

Revision on Unit 1

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (Vocabulary)

1. We use our free time to practice because they bring us joy.
a) schoolwork b) hobbies c) exams d) tests
2. When you play board games, you learn how to work with others in
a) leadership b) movement c) teamwork d) friendship
3. Playing the piano requires a lot of and practice.
a) patience b) speed c) noise d) safety
4. Cycling and skating are physical activities that make you
a) weak b) lazy c) energetic d) bored
5. Maya is going to some beautiful art with paper for the show.
a) solve b) craft c) cycle d) skate
6. I felt great when the teacher announced the Talent Show.
a) excitement b) movement c) pavement d) shipment
7. Doing helps you get better at problem-solving.
a) cycling b) puzzles c) singing d) skating
8. My with Sara grew stronger when we painted together.
a) friendship b) leadership c) membership d) ownership
9. Adam is going to a song while playing the piano.
a) cycle b) solve c) draw d) perform
10. You can write your daily thoughts in a
a) keyboard b) journal c) suitcase d) ticket
11. is a hobby where you move fast on wheels in the park.
a) Painting b) Singing c) Writing d) Skating
12. Hobbies help us learn for life.
a) skills b) names c) numbers d) colors
13. I like because I love being outside on my bike.
a) singing b) drawing c) crafting d) cycling

14. The students reached an to meet on different days.
 a) agreement b) argument c) excitement d) enjoyment
15. To start a hobby, you must first think about your
 a) interests b) homework c) chores d) problems

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (Grammar)

1. Now, I solve difficult puzzles by myself.
 a) could b) can c) couldn't d) was
2. When I was five years old, I ride a big bicycle.
 a) can b) am c) can't d) couldn't
3. In the past, children spend more time playing outside.
 a) could b) can c) can't d) are
4. you play the piano when you were six?
 a) Can b) Could c) Do d) Are
5. Adam skate in the park today because he has a broken leg.
 a) can't b) couldn't c) can d) could
6. Before I started the club, I lead a team.
 a) can b) can't c) couldn't d) am
7. My grandfather run very fast in the past.
 a) can b) is c) can't d) could
8. Nowadays, students learn many skills for life.
 a) could b) can c) are d) were
9. I finish the puzzle yesterday; it was too hard.
 a) couldn't b) can't c) can d) could
10. you craft with paper right now?
 a) Can b) Could c) Did d) Were
11. When she was ten she play any musical instruments.
 a) can't b) couldn't c) can d) is
12. They go cycling these days because the weather is great.
 a) can b) could c) couldn't d) are

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

puzzles - joy - friendship - First - collect

Starting a new hobby is wonderful! ❶, you should decide what you like. If you like thinking, you can solve ❷ Next, you need to ❸ the things you need, like a game board or seeds. Doing hobbies with others helps build a strong ❹ Finally, enjoy your achievement when you get better at your skill!

4 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

patience - crafting - skills - Next - cycling

Hobbies are activities that bring us joy. Some people enjoy ❶ with paper to make beautiful art. Learning a new hobby like the piano needs ❷ because you must practice every day. ❸, you should share your hobby with your class. Hobbies are great because they help us learn important ❹ for life.

5 Read the text and answer the questions:

Hobbies are wonderful activities that we love to do during our free time. They are important because they help us relax our minds and stay healthy. For example, physical hobbies like cycling make our bodies very strong and energetic. When we play board games with others, we learn how to use teamwork and solve problems. In the past, people enjoyed simple outdoor hobbies like fishing or running. Today, we have many choices that make us much smarter, stronger, and happier every single day.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Hobbies help us and stay healthy.
a) work b) relax c) sleep d) study
- Cycling makes our bodies
a) strong b) weak c) tired d) old

B Answer the following questions:

3. What do we learn from playing games?
4. What were some hobbies people had in the past?
5. Summarize the text in two sentences.

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. Now, I (could) speak three languages.
2. When I was younger, I (not can) swim in the sea.
3. (Are) you play the piano when you were a child?
4. Look! Ahmed (could) ride his bike to school.
5. In the past, they (cannot) solve these puzzles.
6. These days, we (couldn't) go to the park every weekend.
7. He couldn't (draws) when he was four years old.
8. Can you (helping) me with my hobby right now?

7 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

1. fun - bring - Hobbies - to - and - us - joy.
▶
2. learn - board - We - when - play - teamwork - games
▶
3. good - helps - relax - us - hobby - A.
▶
4. We - show - will - a - talent - have.
▶
5. decided - club - hobby - Students - start - to - a.
▶
6. play - right - piano - the - Can - you - now -?
▶ ?
7. finish - couldn't - He - puzzle - difficult - the.
▶
8. skills - Students - can - many - life - learn.
▶

9. skate - today - park - cannot - the - in - They.

10. yesterday - Could - help - you - your - mother?

8 Punctuate the following:

1. maya can play the piano now

2. Could nour solve the puzzle yesterday

3. adam is going to paint next week

4. they can't skate in the park today

5. Did sarah start her new hobby

6. I could read when i was six

7. can Kareem plant the small seeds

8. we learn teamwork from board games

9. was the hobby club crowded yesterday

10. laila organized a new reading corner

9 Write a paragraph of (40) words using the words below:

"My Favorite Hobby"

► board games - teamwork - solving

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الملحق.

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:



(2Ms)

1. Adam is going to play the violin next week. (.....)
2. Maya can do some crafting with paper. (.....)
3. Hobbies help people relax and stay healthy. (.....)
4. Playing board games helps people learn schoolwork. (.....)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

(2Ms)

1. In the art room, Sara showed her beautiful
 a) stories b) paintings c) bikes d) puzzles
2. When I was five, I ride a bike, but now I can.
 a) can b) can't c) couldn't d) am
3. Doing hobbies with others helps build a strong
 a) friendship b) schoolwork c) exam d) problem
4. you solve this difficult puzzle right now?
 a) Could b) Were c) Can d) Did

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (2Ms)

sadness - First - skills - collect - joy

Starting a new hobby is very easy! ①, take a moment to think about what you love. Next, it's time to ② the things you need to begin. Hobbies are important because they help us learn ③ for life. Sharing your hobby with your family brings ④ and makes you happy!

4 Read the text and answer the questions: (7Ms)

At our school, a group of creative students decided to start a wonderful Hobby Club. Many activities happen in different places. In the art room, Sara and Maya painted beautiful pictures together side by side. Out on the playground, Omar taught basketball skills to his excited friends. Meanwhile, in the quiet library, Laila organized a cozy reading corner because she truly loves books. Finally, Kareem started a small garden to teach others how to care for plants. The Hobby Club is a fantastic place of leadership, amazing creativity, and great fun.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Laila organized a corner in the library.
 a) singing b) painting c) reading d) skating
- The Hobby Club is a place of and creativity.
 a) homework b) leadership c) tests d) sadness

B Answer the following questions:

3. What did Omar teach on the playground?



4. Why did Kareem start a small garden?



5. Who painted side by side in the art room?



5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (4Ms)

- Now, I (could) play the piano.
- When she was six, she (not can) swim.

Test on Unit 1

6 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences: (2Ms)

1. teamwork - We - board - learn - from - games.

▶

2. write - could - I - stories - when - I - younger - was.

▶

7 Punctuate the following:

(4Ms)

1. Can amr craft with paper today

▶

2. Nour and adam enjoy playing the piano

▶

8 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below: (7Ms)

"Hobbies"

▶ cycling - board games - drawing

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Revision on Unit 2

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (Vocabulary)

- I was sick yesterday, so I went to the
a) park b) school c) clinic d) cinema
- You're very hot, I think you have a
a) fever b) train c) board d) stomach
- Yesterday, I went to the and swam in the sea.
a) museum b) temple c) tomb d) beach
- They went to the pharmacy to buy some
a) food b) fruit c) medicine d) cakes
- Last week, I put a because I broke my leg.
a) bruise b) bandage c) kit d) paper
- I saw a/an and two people were injured.
a) cup b) balcony c) accident d) garden
- In our school, we have a big first- in the nurse's room.
a) aid-kit b) computer c) tablet d) door
- are very important for poor people.
a) Dictation b) Invitation c) Emails d) Donations
- In this hospital, the is free for sick people.
a) books b) treatment c) gathering d) homes
- It's to say "thank you" to someone helps you.
a) rude b) bad c) polite d) awful

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (Grammar)

- To stay healthy, you be on diet and exercise daily.
a) mustn't b) don't have to
c) must d) doesn't have to
- You touch that wire! It's dangerous.
a) mustn't b) have to c) must d) doesn't have to
- She wear a uniform at her new school. It's a must.
a) doesn't have to b) have to
c) mustn't d) must

Revision

4. I finish this project tonight because we'll send it tomorrow.
 a) mustn't b) have to c) don't have to d) has to
5. It's a holiday tomorrow, so we get up early.
 a) must b) have to c) don't have to d) mustn't
6. He take the medicine if he feels better.
 a) must b) has to c) have to d) doesn't have to
7. Visitors feed the animals in the zoo. It's not allowed.
 a) have to b) must c) mustn't d) doesn't have to
8. You bring an umbrella. I have an extra one you can use.
 a) must b) have to c) don't have to d) mustn't
9. Students use mobile phones during the exam.
 a) mustn't b) have to c) must d) doesn't have to
10. She work on weekends.
 a) have to b) has to c) mustn't d) doesn't have to

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

medicine - stomachache - clinic - class - examination

My dad was sick last week. He had a ①, so he didn't feel well. We took him to the ② The nurse helped us in the ③ room until the doctor came. He examined my father and gave him some ④ He told him to stay at home and have some rest.

4 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

friendly - dirty - clean - donate - sick

We have a big hospital in our city. It helps ① people to take their treatment for free. People in the city always ② money to this hospital. Doctors and nurses are very ③ there. All the examination rooms are ④ Patients feel safe there.

5 Read the text and answer the questions:

Our school is always safe. We have a small first aid kit in each classroom. It has very important things like bandages, plasters and scissors. We have to tell our teacher if anyone gets injured. We mustn't use the kit by ourselves because it might have dangerous things. The teachers put the kit in a clean, high place in our class. If anybody needs to go to the nurse's room, the teachers will let them go. We have to be careful when we play or run to keep ourselves healthy and safe.

A Choose the correct answer:

- We have to tell our teacher if anyone gets
 a) cried b) clapped c) injured d) slept
- We have to be when we play or run
 a) carless b) soft c) caring d) careful

B Answer the following questions:

- What things does the first aid kit have?
 ▶
- Where do the teachers put the kit?
 ▶
- What will happen if anybody needs to go to the nurse's room?
 ▶

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- You (mustn't) be quiet in the library. It's the rule.
- She (have to) take her driving test next week.
- We (not have to) pay for the tickets. They are free!
- I (has to) go to the bank before it closes.
- Students (not have to) wear uniforms. It's a fun day.

Revision

6. You (**must**) forget to call your mother. It's her birthday.
7. He (**have to**) cook tonight. We're ordering pizza.
8. A doctor has to (**studying**) for many years.
9. You mustn't (**touches**) the wet paint.
10. We have (**get**) a visa to visit that country.

7 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

1. has - cough - a - **She** - a - headache - and.
▶
2. fast - for - **No** - three - food - weeks.
▶
3. have - first - aid kit - **They** - a - their - school - in.
▶
4. have - **You** - clinic - to - the - go - to.
▶
5. mustn't - in - **He** - shout - the - classroom.
▶
6. give - **Some** - free - hospitals - the - for - treatment.
▶
7. must - your - park - **Where** - you - car?
▶ ?
8. go - have - clinic - **I** - to - the - to.
▶
9. does - to - have - do - **What** - she?
▶ ?
10. do - be - must - to - **You** - exercise - fit.
▶

8 Punctuate the following:

1. where is the nearest bus stop
▶

2. mariam went to London last summer



3. can Salma help her mother now



4. did you feed the cat yesterday



5. what time does the film start



6. hady visited his uncle last week



7. i need to buy milk and bread



8. My friend's birthday is in may



9. the hospital is clean and safe



10. can I go to the clinic



9 Write a paragraph of Forty (40) words using the words below:

"Your Trip to Egypt"

► pyramids - Nile - history

Handwriting practice area with ten horizontal dotted lines for writing a paragraph.

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الملحق.

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:



(2Ms)

1. Adam went to the park yesterday. ()
2. Adam's father has a bad cough. ()
3. The doctor gave Adam some medicine. ()
4. Adam must stay at home and rest. ()

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

(2Ms)

1. You buy medicine at the
 a) school b) pharmacy c) park d) bank
2. People money to help the hospital buy new equipment.
 a) donate b) play c) eat d) sleep
3. Students use their mobile phones during the exam.
 a) must b) have to c) has to d) mustn't
4. Does she to wear a uniform at school?
 a) has b) having c) have d) had

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (2Ms)

clinic - headache - friendly - rest - treatment

My friend Hady was very sick yesterday. He had a bad ① ,
 so his mother took him to the ② The doctors there were very
 ③ and helpful. They gave him the right ④ and
 told him to stay in bed and have some rest.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

(7Ms)

Our school has many rules to keep us healthy. We must wash our hands with soap before we eat. In the classroom, we must listen to the teacher and be quiet. If a student feels bad or has a cough, they should go to the school clinic. The doctor there is very kind and helps everyone. We must not run in the hallways because we might fall. Following these rules makes our school a happy place.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Students should wash their hands with before eating.
a) sand b) soap c) ink d) glue
- If a student feels they should go to the clinic.
a) bad b) happy c) strong d) fast

B Answer the following questions:

- Where should a student go if they have a cough?

►

- Why must students not run in the hallways?

►

- What happens when students follow the school rules?

►

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (4Ms)

- You (must) shout in the library; it is a quiet place.
- I (has to) finish my homework before I watch TV.

Test on Unit 2

6 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences: (2Ms)

1. has - headache - She - a - cough - and - a



2. mustn't - animals - Visitors - the - feed - the zoo - in.



7 Punctuate the following:

(4Ms)

1. where is the nearest hospital



2. Ali went to Cairo last monday



8 Write a paragraph of Forty (40) words using the words below: (7Ms)

"Healthy Habits"

► exercise - healthy food - sleep

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Revision on Unit 3

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (Vocabulary)

- My sister is going to travel, so she packed her
 a) suitcases b) tables c) beds d) chairs
- This place is very Let's search for a quieter one.
 a) calm b) crowded c) peaceful d) relaxed
- Yesterday, I went to the and swam in the sea.
 a) museum b) temple c) tomb d) beach
- We visited Giza to see the Great and the Sphinx.
 a) bedrooms b) angles c) squares d) Pyramids
- Our ancient civilization makes us in the world.
 a) special b) bad c) wrong d) noisy
- We had a nice on the Nile River.
 a) walk b) run c) hike d) cruise
- I want to visit Luxor to see the powerful there.
 a) planets b) temples c) room d) moon
- I live in a big, but my uncle lives in a small town.
 a) kitchen b) bathroom c) city d) classroom
- I sent him the for my wedding.
 a) block b) landmark c) load d) invitation
- This famous tower is a/an in this country.
 a) board b) email c) star d) landmark

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (Grammar)

- She to visit Paris next week.
 a) going b) is go c) is going d) go
- They are going to science.
 a) study b) studying c) studied d) studies
- I am buy a car next year.
 a) going b) go c) going to d) goes

Revision

4. I going to work today. I am very sick.
 a) am b) isn't c) isn't d) am not
5. you to watch the movie?
 a) Are / go b) Are/ going c) Is / going d) Do / going
6. He is going tomorrow.
 a) to travel b) travel c) travelling d) travelled
7. What to do?
 a) you are going b) you going c) are you going d) going
8. She isn't come to the party tomorrow.
 a) going to b) go c) went d) goes
9. The teacher said: "The examgoing to be difficult."
 a) am b) is c) are d) be
10. They are going to at the cafe at 7.
 a) to meet b) met c) meeting d) meet

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

crowded - sandcastle - fun - worse - pack

We're going to travel on a trip next Friday. We're going to ❶ our suitcases. The beach isn't going to be ❷, so I will have a peaceful time. My sister and I decide to start the day on the beach by building a ❸ I can't wait to have ❹ and feel the warm sun.

4 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

Sphinx - Nile - beaches - Egyptians - temples

Karim and his family are going to travel to their home country. They're ❶, but they moved many years ago. They are going to visit the Pyramids and the ❷ They're excited to sail a boat at sunset along the ❸ River. Then they're going to travel to Hurgada to enjoy the wonderful ❹

5 Read the text and answer the questions:

We are going to go on a school trip to Wadi El Gemal Park. It is going to be at a campsite. We are going to pack our suitcases with warm clothes. Our teacher made sure that all students received their bus tickets. The campsite might be crowded because another school is going to visit too.

When we arrive, we are going to set up our tents near the mountain. Our teacher is going to teach us about desert plants and animals.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. The trip is going to be at a

- a) sea b) campsite c) door d) lake

2. They are going to pack their suitcases with clothes.

- a) warm b) soft c) hard d) light

B Answer the following questions:

3. Where are they going to go on the school trip?

▶

4. Why might the campsite be crowded?

▶

5. What is their teacher going to teach them there?

▶

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. We are going (sleep) early today.

2. They (not going) to sell the house.

3. (Are) she going to play volleyball tomorrow.

4. My mom is going (bake) a cake this evening.

5. My father is (go) drive the car to his work.

6. Salma and Reem (be) going to meet each other tonight.

Revision

7. Shady is going (swim) in the pool this afternoon.
8. My brother (not go) to study math after school.
9. (Is) you going to help me to do my homework.
10. I (be) going to travel to Aswan next holiday .

7 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

1. his - He - emails - received - friends - from.
▶
2. are - to - finally - going - We - go - trip - on - a.
▶
3. packed - My - suitcases - yesterday - father - the.
▶
4. bus - Did - tickets - your - receive - you?
▶ ?
5. am - going to - museum - I - the - visit - grand.
▶
6. city - This - noisy - crowded - is - very - and.
▶
7. going - are - next - Where - to - you - travel - month?
▶ ?
8. took - photos - trip - I - last - a lot of.
▶
9. going - Nada - is - to - She - invite.
▶
10. around - the - sat - campfire - We - warm.
▶

8 Punctuate the following:

1. menna is travelling to Cairo tomorrow
▶

2. zeina will go to the campsite



3. did she send all the emails



4. is he going to come today



5. nour went to the beach yesterday



6. how did you travel to Aswan



7. i enjoy the delicious Egyptian food



8. are you going to have a picnic



9. adam went to Hurgada last week



10. did you swim in the sea



9 Write a paragraph of Forty (40) words using the words below:

"Your Trip to Egypt"

► Pyramids - tombs - ancient

Handwriting practice area with multiple lines for writing a paragraph.

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الملحق.

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:



(2Ms)

1. Karim and his family are going to sleep. (.....)
2. Karim moved abroad three years ago. (.....)
3. Karim wants to show his family the gallery. (.....)
4. They're going to pack their suitcases with light clothes. (.....)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

(2Ms)

1. My father is going to to Paris next week.
a) travel b) carry c) cry d) dry
2. You are going to the museum tomorrow.
a) go b) went c) to go d) goes
3. I need to buy a new to wear on the next weekend trip.
a) food b) outfit c) drink d) table
4. Is he check his ticket before travelling.
a) goes b) go c) going d) going to

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (2Ms)

crowded - built - fun - ate - beaches

Last summer holiday, we went to Alexandria. We wanted to enjoy its wonderful ① My father and I swam in the sea when my brother and my sister ② a sandcastle. It wasn't ③ , so we had quiet time. My mom made us some sandwiches. We had lots of ④

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

(7Ms)

My friends and I are going to travel on a trip to Luxor. Luxor has many beautiful places. It also has a lot of ancient places to visit. We're going to take a train to Luxor. People often call it the "World's greatest open-air museum". We're going to explore the amazing temples of Karnak and Luxor. We want to learn more about our powerful kings like Ramses II. If we have time, we'll take a Nile cruise to Aswan. I hope to enjoy our time there.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Luxor has many places.

a) beautiful

b) ugly

c) boring

d) relaxing

2. If they have time, they'll take a to Aswan.

a) route

b) Nile cruise

c) train

d) bus

B Answer the following questions:

3. How are they going to travel to Luxor?



4. What do people often call Luxor?



5. What are they going to explore?



5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

(4Ms)

1. Hany (go) to go out with his friends tomorrow.

2. They are going (write) their homework this night.

Test on Unit 3

6 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences: (2Ms)

1. you - pack - Are - going to - your - suitcases?

▶

2. hike - we - going - to - Are - today?

▶

7 Punctuate the following: (4Ms)

1. We have an english project today

▶

2. do you have any future plans

▶

8 Write a paragraph of Forty (40) words using the words below: (7Ms)

"A campsite Trip"

▶ lake - campfire - tents

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Revision on Unit 4

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (Vocabulary)

1. A helps police officers catch criminals.
a) guide dog b) dolphin c) police dog d) horse
2. help blind people walk safely.
a) Horses b) Guide dogs c) Police dogs d) Dolphins
3. Dolphins can help people who are in in the sea.
a) danger b) swimming c) playing d) fishing
4. Sheep's wool is used to make
a) milk b) sweaters c) cheese d) eggs
5. A protects sheep on a farm.
a) cat b) chicken c) horse d) guard dog
6. Egrets help farmers by eating harmful
a) grain b) insects c) plants d) fish
7. Egrets have long legs to walk through
a) fields b) barns c) water d) grass
8. Egrets are birds with white
a) wool b) feathers c) legs d) beaks
9. The word "calm" means
a) angry b) amazed c) peaceful d) scared
10. "Harmful" is the opposite of
a) helpful b) kind c) fresh d) warm
11. Animals that work with people are called
a) wildlife b) pets c) helpers d) criminals

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (Grammar)

1. The farmer usually the fields with his water buffalo.
a) ploughs b) to plough c) is ploughing d) plough
2. Look! The donkey heavy baskets to the market now.
a) carries b) is carrying c) carry d) are carrying

Revision

3. Pigeons messages to different places.
 a) delivers b) to deliver c) are delivering d) deliver
4. Water buffaloes with work in the fields every day.
 a) help b) helps c) helping d) is helping
5. The gecko on the wall right now.
 a) crawls b) are crawling c) crawl d) is crawling
6. Farmers often donkeys to carry vegetables.
 a) use b) using c) is using d) uses
7. Be careful! That beetle towards you.
 a) moves b) is moving c) move d) are moving
8. A lion fruits. It only eats meat.
 a) doesn't eat b) isn't eating c) don't eat d) not eat
9. the pigeon delivering a message now?
 a) Does b) Is c) Do d) Are
10. My father doesn't English at the school.
 a) teaches b) is teaching c) teach d) teaching
11. tigers hunt during the day?
 a) Do b) Does c) Is d) Are
12. She working in the field at this moment.
 a) doesn't b) isn't c) not d) don't

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

guard dog - wool - lay - insects - police dogs

Omar visited his uncle's farm. He saw sheep eating grass. Their thick
 ① is cut once a year to make warm clothes. A ②
 was running around to protect the sheep. Near the barn, chickens
 ③ eggs each morning. Egrets are also helpful because they
 eat harmful ④ in the fields.

4 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

donkeys - insects - harmful - fields - natural

The egret is a bird that helps farmers. It has white feathers, long legs, and long beak. It eats ① that can destroy and harm rice plants in the fields. This is a ② way to protect the crops. Because of the egrets in the ③, the farmer does not need to use too many ④ chemicals.

5 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

swimmers - police - dogs - rescue - danger

Animals are our great friends. In some places, guide ① are trained to help blind people. If a person is in ② in the ocean, smart dolphins can ③ them. They are very strong and can help ④ get back to the boat. They are true heroes of the sea.

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. They (not / watch) television right now.
2. (you / study) English at the moment?
3. My father (drive) to work every morning.
4. Look! The cat (chase) a mouse.
5. The baby (cry) because it is hungry.
6. I (not like) spicy food.
7. The teacher (explain) the lesson at the moment.
8. The birds (sing) in the trees now.
9. he (work) on the farm every day?
10. Listen! Someone (knock) at the door.
11. The sun (rise) in the east.
12. She (not work) today. She is sick.

7 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

1. dogs - Police - officers - help - criminals - catch.
▶
2. blind - Guide dogs - people - walk - safely - help.
▶
3. every - Chickens - lay - eggs - morning - some.
▶
4. insects - harmful - Egrets - eat - in - the fields.
▶
5. people - Dolphins - in danger - help - in - the sea.
▶
6. Horses - people - feel - calm - help - to.
▶
7. buffaloes - Egrets - stand - sometimes - on - water.
▶
8. wool - What - do - for - use - people?
▶?

8 Punctuate the following:

1. police dogs help officers catch criminals ▶
2. do guide dogs help blind people ▶
3. cows give us fresh milk every day ▶
4. is the guard dog watching the sheep ▶
5. chickens lay eggs in the morning ▶
6. egrets eat harmful insects in fields ▶
8. are horses and dogs calm animals ▶
9. Mr. ali milks cows every day ▶
10. sheep wool is thick and warm ▶
12. do donkeys carry heavy loads ▶

Test on Unit

4

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الملحق.



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. Police dogs catch criminals using their eyes. (.....)
2. Guide dogs help blind people cross streets safely. (.....)
3. Horses can make sad people feel better. (.....)
4. Rescue dolphins help people in forests. (.....)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (2Ms)

1. Donkeys transport crops, water, and supplies.
 a) countries b) bottles c) dishes d) containers
2. have an important job as messengers.
 a) Pigeons b) Dogs c) Donkeys d) Chickens
3. A white egret in a field, at the moment.
 a) is stand b) standing c) is standing d) stands
4. The scarab beetles in the soil.
 a) is work b) work c) is working d) are work

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (2Ms)

loads - workers - cheese - blankets - jobs

Laila visits her dad's farm and sees animal helpers. Cows give fresh milk for drinking and ① Sheep grow thick wool for ② A clever dog watches the sheep. Chickens lay eggs every morning. Horses pull carts and donkeys carry heavy ③ Dad says "always be kind to the animals." Farm animals are hard ④ who help people.

Test on Unit 4

4

Read the text and answer the questions:

(7Ms)

I am reading about animal helpers. It says that egrets help farmers by eating insects that harm crops. It raids quickly with its long beak, catching hoppers that eat the corn plants. Egrets have long legs that help them walk through mud. They often work near cattle in the fields. They sometimes stand on the cattle's backs to see well. The egrets eat flies that bother the cattle, and the cattle don't mind. Farmers use fewer chemicals because of these birds. This makes the food healthier. Egrets can eat hundreds of insects daily. Farmers appreciate these birds for natural insect control.

A

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The main idea of the text is about
a) Cattles b) Egrets c) Farmers d) Insects
2. The word "raids" means
a) eats quietly b) attacks suddenly
c) sings loudly d) walks slowly

B

Answer the following questions:

3. How do egrets and cattle help each other in the field?
▶
4. Why do farmers appreciate having egrets?
▶
5. Summarize how egrets help farmers in two different ways.
▶

5

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

(4Ms)

1. (Is) Ahmed and you go to school every day?
2. We (help) our teacher now.

6 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences: (2Ms)

1. hard - Some - animals - very - are - working.

▶

2. by - help - ploughs - Buffaloes - farmers - pulling.

▶

7 Punctuate the following: (4Ms)

1. the dog is running around the sheep

▶

2. what do they do for plants

▶

8 Write a paragraph of Forty (40) words using the words below: (7Ms)

"A Day in the barn"

▶ cows - grass - milk

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Revision on Unit 5

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (Vocabulary)

1. The star we see during the day is the
 a) Moon b) Sun c) Mars d) Saturn
2. The planet known for its beautiful rings is
 a) Earth b) Jupiter c) Saturn d) Mercury
3. Our planet is called
 a) Venus b) Neptune c) Mars d) Earth
4. The red planet is
 a) Mercury b) Venus c) Mars d) Jupiter
5. A group of many stars is called a
 a) galaxy b) planet c) solar system d) Moon
6. The largest planet in our solar system is
 a) Saturn b) Jupiter c) Earth d) Uranus
7. The smallest planet is
 a) Mars b) Venus c) Mercury d) Neptune
8. Our galaxy is called the
 a) Red Planet b) Solar System c) Space Museum d) Milky Way
9. Sara Sabry is the Egypt's first female
 a) teacher b) doctor c) astronaut d) scientist
10. When people work together, it is called
 a) teamwork b) schoolwork c) homework d) project
11. A vehicle that travels in space is called a
 a) rocket b) car c) boat d) train
12. A/An is used to launch satellites into space.
 a) comet b) planet c) asteroid d) spaceship

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (Grammar)

1. Tom is tall, but Jack is
 a) taller b) tallest c) tall d) more tall
2. Charlie is the boy in the class.
 a) good b) better c) more good d) best
3. The motorbike is than the bicycle.
 a) expensive b) expensiver
 c) more expensive d) most expensive
4. The blue whale is the animal in the ocean.
 a) big b) biggest c) bigger d) more big
5. This book is interesting, but that documentary is
 a) more interesting b) interesting
 c) than interesting d) the most interesting
6. Your drawing is in the whole class.
 a) beautiful b) more beautiful
 c) the most beautiful d) most beautiful
7. The astronaut felt in space than on Earth.
 a) happy b) more happy c) happiest d) happier
8. Saturn is than Earth.
 a) large b) larger c) largest d) more large
9. Mercury is the planet in our solar system.
 a) smallest b) smaller c) small d) more small
10. This story is than the one we read yesterday.
 a) exciting b) more exciting
 c) most exciting d) the most exciting
11. The elephant is than the horse.
 a) heavy b) more heavy c) heaviest d) heavier
12. The Sun is the star in our solar system.
 a) bright b) brighter c) brightest d) more bright

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

Sun - moon - solar system - star - galaxy

Our universe is very big that it has a lot of stars and planets. We live in a ① called the Milky Way. Inside it is our ② It has eight planets that go around the ③ At night, we can see the ④ and many stars.

4 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

red - iron - Earth - Mars - planet

There are many planets in our solar system. ① is known as the Red Planet. It is the fourth planet. Its soil is rich in ② which makes it looks ③ It is between Earth and Jupiter. It is smaller than ④ Scientists look for life on there.

5 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

space - dreams - solar system - astronaut - engineer

Sara Sabry is a famous character in Egypt. She is the first Arab ① to travel into ② in 2022. Sara says "I want to inspire young people in Egypt to follow their ③ and believe that nothing is impossible." She studied the ④ and the planets. I think she became a role model for young people.

6 Read the text and answer the questions:

(7Ms)

Amina and Omar visited the planetarium. They saw the Sun, the Moon, and all the planets on a big screen. The guide told them that Mars is called the Red Planet because of its iron-rich soil. Jupiter

is the largest planet, and Saturn has shiny rings. The stars they saw are part of our galaxy, the Milky Way. The solar system is inside this galaxy. The children thought space was very exciting.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. The main idea of the text is about a visit to the
 a) park b) planetarium c) zoo d) movies
2. Mars is called the Red Planet because it
 a) has iron-rich soil b) is very hot
 c) is far from the Sun d) has water

B Answer the following questions:

3. What did the guide say about Jupiter?



4. What is the name of our galaxy?



5. How did the children feel about space?



7 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. Jupiter is (large) than Earth.
2. Mercury is the (small) planet in the solar system.
3. This book is (interesting) than that one.
4. Sara is the (tall) girl in our class.
5. This puzzle is the (difficult) one I have ever seen.
6. My cat is (fat) than your cat.
7. The Nile is the (long) river in the world.
8. Winter is (cold) than autumn.
9. My brother is (old) than me.
10. That was the (funny) day of my life.

Revision

8 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

1. Sun - The - is - star - our - brightest.



2. is - the - Mars - planet - red - called.



3. beautiful - Saturn - rings - has - shiny.



4. Way - Our - is - galaxy - Milky- the.



5. is - Egyptian - Sara Sabry - astronaut - an.



6. is - very - schools - Teamwork - important - in.



7. Nada - Adam - with - worked - the - on - poster.



8. planets - How many - are there - in - solar system - our?



9. Jupiter - the largest - planet - is - solar system - in the.



10. They - a poster - class - for - made - science.



9 Punctuate the following:

1. the sun is a bright star.



2. Is mars called the red planet



3. saturn has beautiful rings



4. sara sabry is an astronaut.



5. nada and adam are classmates.



6. did you visit the planetarium yesterday



10 Write a paragraph of Forty (40) words using the words below:

"The solar system "

► **Sun - planets - Milky Way**

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الملحق.



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

(2Ms)

1. Sara Sabry is the first Arab female pilot. (.....)
2. Uranus is closer to the Sun than Neptune. (.....)
3. The Milky Way is a galaxy. (.....)
4. Teamwork means working alone. (.....)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

(2Ms)

1. is called the Red Planet.
 - a) Mars
 - b) Jupiter
 - c) Venus
 - d) Earth
2. Adam wanted to work at first.
 - a) together
 - b) alone
 - c) slowly
 - d) quickly
3. Venus is hotter Earth.
 - a) then
 - b) that
 - c) thin
 - d) than
4. Jupiter is the planet in the solar system.
 - a) larger
 - b) large
 - c) largest
 - d) most large

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (2Ms)

spins - Milky - stars - sky - engineer

The Milky Way is the galaxy where Earth and the Sun are. It looks like a bright band of ① across the night ② It is shaped like a big circle that ③, full of stars, gas, and dust. The ④ Way has over 200 billion stars!

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

(7Ms)

Nada and Adam were making a poster about the planets for their science class. At first, Adam did not want help. He drew Mercury, Venus, and Earth alone. The next day, the poster was not finished. The teacher looked worried. Adam then agreed to let Nada help. Together, they colored Mars red and added rings to Saturn. Adam wrote facts about Jupiter and Neptune. When they finished, the poster was bright and clear. The teacher praised their teamwork.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The main idea of the text is that Adam and Nada
 a) played football. b) learned to work together.
 c) visited a museum. d) watched a documentary.
- What did Nada add to Saturn on the poster?
 a) color b) facts c) rings d) stars

B Answer the following questions:

3. Why did the teacher look worried?

►

4. What did Adam write on the poster?

►

5. What did they learn from this project?

►

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (4Ms)

- Mercury is (small) than Earth.
- Jupiter is the (large) planet in the solar system.

Test on Unit 5

6 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences: (2Ms)

1. to be - want - you - Do - astronaut - an?

▶ ?

2. galaxy - Our - Milky Way - is - the - called.

▶

7 Punctuate the following: (4Ms)

1. Sara sabry is an egyptian astronaut.

▶

2. Is saturn your favorite planet

▶

8 Write a paragraph of Forty (40) words using the words below: (7Ms)

"My Favorite Planet"

▶ Saturn – solar system – shiny rings

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Part 2

Weekly Evaluations

Week1: Based on Unit1

Choose the correct answer:

1. Omar enjoys in his free time. He likes making things from paper.
a) painting b) crafting c) singing d) cycling
2. Youssef spent the afternoon around the park on his bike.
a) cycling b) coloring
c) writing d) playing the piano
3. When we are, we need brushes and colors.
a) cycling b) skating c) painting d) crafting
4. Huda is very She always has new ideas.
a) creative b) favorite c) amazing d) favorite
5. Ali enjoys solving because he likes joining the pieces together.
a) games b) puzzles c) journals d) pictures
6. We see the stars last night because the sky was clear.
a) can b) couldn't c) can't d) could
7. Last week, my sister solve the puzzle. It was so easy.
a) can b) couldn't c) can't d) could
8. Salma speak three languages fluently now.
a) can b) could c) have d) couldn't
9. Omar attend the party yesterday because he was ill.
a) could b) can c) can't d) couldn't
10. My brother draw very well when he was younger.
a) can b) could c) can't d) wouldn't

Week2: Based on Unit1

Choose the correct answer:

- If you like painting, singing, or dancing, that could be your
 a) journal b) paper c) talent d) garden
- In your time, you can ride your bike.
 a) bad b) free c) count d) earn
- Some hobbies require, like completing puzzles.
 a) patience b) pieces c) example d) success
- Hobbies really because they make us happier and healthier.
 a) relax b) suggest c) finish d) count
- The students decided to a hobby club at school.
 a) lose b) join c) look d) read
- When I was younger, I could long stories easily.
 a) read b) reads c) reading d) be read
- He finish his homework on time and went to bed early.
 a) can b) could c) can't d) has
- We go with you tonight because we are busy.
 a) can b) could c) can't d) don't
- I swim very well when I was a child.
 a) can b) could c) can't d) must
- She could a beautiful picture yesterday.
 a) drew b) draws c) drawing d) draw

Week3: Based on Unit2

Choose the correct answer:

- If you have a high temperature, you have a
 a) cough b) fever c) clinic d) medicine
- A doctor gives the patient on how to get better.
 a) liquids b) check-up c) rules d) advice

3. The place where you buy medicine is called a
 a) clinic b) examination room
 c) hospital d) pharmacy
4. A is the pain you feel inside your head.
 a) sore throat b) headache c) toothache d) stomachache
5. When you feel, it means you are unwell or ill.
 a) healthy b) important c) weak d) serious
6. The helps the doctor and cares for the patients in the clinic.
 a) pilot b) nurse c) teacher d) pharmacist
7. You follow the school rules.
 a) must b) mustn't
 c) don't have to d) doesn't have to
8. He pay for the tickets because they are free on Sundays.
 a) must b) don't have to c) doesn't have to d) have to
9. Students use their phones during the exam. It's against the rules.
 a) must b) mustn't c) have to d) don't have to
10. We be quiet in the library.
 a) can't b) shouldn't c) must d) don't have to

Week4: Based on Unit2

Choose the correct answer:

1. This situation is not, you will feel better soon."
 a) weak b) tired c) sick d) serious
2. To have a means your throat is painful, red, and swollen.
 a) toothache b) sore throat c) headache d) stomachache
3. The doctor advised Fady to drink like soup or water.
 a) medicine b) ice cream c) warm liquids d) rules
4. We went to the for a quick check-up because my son was sick.
 a) garden b) park c) club d) clinic
5. Hazem's father usually does a every month.
 a) rule b) liquid c) check-up d) wound

Revision

6. I take my medicine and rest to feel better quickly.
 a) can't b) couldn't c) mustn't d) must
7. You shout at hospitals.
 a) have to b) mustn't c) must d) has to
8. She to be quiet in the class.
 a) have b) must c) mustn't d) has
9. They come early today. It's not necessary.
 a) must b) doesn't have to c) don't have to d) mustn't
10. The doctor said you must the medicine twice a day.
 a) took b) take c) taking d) takes

Week5: Based on Unit3

Choose the correct answer:

1. Sarah bought a to put her clothes in for the trip.
 a) scooter b) car c) suitcase d) bike
2. Before going on a trip, Ahmed always his bag.
 a) bakes b) packs c) books d) blocks
3. Our neighborhood is very and busy, so we are thinking about moving.
 a) calm b) quiet c) crowded d) peaceful
4. During our trip to Giza, we admired the and enjoyed a camel ride.
 a) square b) Pyramids c) crown d) palace
5. In Luxor, we explored the famous of Karnak.
 a) beach b) island c) temple d) telephone
6. Linda is going to a new bicycle next weekend.
 a) bought b) buys c) buy d) buying
7. I going to make pancakes for breakfast tomorrow.
 a) is b) are c) am d) was
8. Look at those dark clouds! I think it soon.
 a) to snow b) snow c) is going to snow d) snows

9. I am not to travel to Paris next week.
 a) go b) goes c) gone d) going
10. What you going to do?
 a) do b) are c) is d) did

Week6: Based on Unit3

Choose the correct answer:

1. To see the and ride a camel, we went to Giza City.
 a) square b) Pyramids c) crown d) palace
2. In Luxor, we visited the Egyptian called Karnak.
 a) beach b) island c) temple d) telephone
3. Our history makes us feel as Egyptians.
 a) bored b) ugly c) sad d) special
4. Yesterday, we enjoyed a wonderful on the river.
 a) cruise b) walk c) hike d) slide
5. You should put on your because the sun is shining brightly.
 a) jacket b) sweater c) sunglasses d) icecap
6. They can among mountains and enjoy the nature.
 a) hold b) hike c) fight d) drink
7. I visit my aunt tomorrow.
 a) am going to b) was going to c) go to d) going
8. She study for the test tonight.
 a) is going b) is going to c) going to d) was going to
9. They play football after school.
 a) are going b) are going to c) going d) were going
10. We travel to Alexandria next week.
 a) going to b) are go to c) are going to d) go
11. My brother buy a new phone soon.
 a) going b) going to c) are going to d) is going to

Week7: Based on Unit4

Choose the correct answer:

- dogs are trained to catch bad people.
a) Police b) Fighter c) Coward d) Lazy
- I feel very calm and relaxed when I ride a
a) Fox b) tiger c) horse d) lion
- I took my children to watch a show of in the sea.
a) dogs b) cats c) rats d) dolphins
- He never feels scared, so he must be to enter the dark forest.
a) brave b) sorry c) happy d) sad
- You should be while crossing the street.
a) famous b) noisy c) careful d) nervous
- Sara basketball after school every day.
a) play b) plays c) played d) is playing
- Right now, they are their science homework.
a) do b) does c) done d) doing
- He like spicy food because it hurts his stomach.
a) don't b) doesn't c) isn't d) aren't
- At the moment, I lunch with my classmates.
a) is eating b) am eating c) eat d) eats
- My uncle and aunt in a big company.
a) work b) works c) worked d) working

Week8: Based on Unit4

Choose the correct answer:

- The farmer took the wool from his to sell it.
a) cow b) buffalo c) dog d) sheep
- At night, the keep the sheep safe from wolves.
a) guard dog b) guide dog c) cow d) lion

3. When the weather is cold, I put on a warm wool
 a) sweater b) shorts c) swimming suit d) T-shirt
4. The is where the animals' products are kept in the farm.
 a) fridge b) barn c) freezer d) cook
5. Having a healthy morning gives me energy for school.
 a) breakfast b) dinner c) chips d) pizza
6. Listen! She a song in her room.
 a) write b) writes c) is writing d) are writing
7. A: you usually wake up early on weekdays?
 B: Yes, I do.
 a) Do b) Does c) Are d) Am
8. Mona always her lessons before sleeping.
 a) study b) studies c) studied d) studying
9. We to the library now.
 a) are going b) went c) go d) is going
10. I not eating at the moment.
 a) am b) did c) are d) was

Week9: Based on Unit5

Choose the correct answer:

1. Last night, the appeared very bright in the sky.
 a) sun b) moon c) planet d) system
2. We put on sunscreen to protect our skin from the strong
 a) moon b) Mars c) Mercury d) sun
3. Earth comes third in the system.
 a) super b) sound c) solar d) soft
4. The name of our is "Milky Way."
 a) court b) sun c) stars d) galaxy
5. The planet known for its rings is
 a) Saturn b) Mercury c) Venus d) Jupiter

Revision

6. The only planet that has life is
a) Mars b) Earth c) Jupiter d) Venus
7. Watching TV isn't than reading books.
a) useful as b) as useful c) useful d) more useful
8. Science is difficult subject for me.
a) more b) the most c) as d) most
9. I believe Alexandria is the place for summer holidays.
a) well b) good c) better d) best
10. Ahmed is the boy in our class.
a) clever b) cleverer c) cleverest d) more clever

Week10: Based on Unit5

Choose the correct answer:

1. Astronauts travel in to explore other planets.
a) cars b) spaceships c) boats d) taxis
2. We used a telescope to observe a moving across the night sky.
a) comet b) desert c) sun d) land
3. Between Mars and Jupiter, astronauts discovered many in space.
a) suns b) shops c) gardens d) asteroids
4. Yesterday, I noticed a tiny walking in the garden.
a) swing b) sea c) creature d) chair
5. The child pushed with her legs so the went higher and higher.
a) slide b) swing c) scooter d) bike
6. Football is interesting sport for me compared to other sports.
a) more b) most c) as d) the most
7. I think Sharm El-Sheikh is the destination for summer trips.
a) well b) good c) better d) best
8. Our garden is than my neighbor's.
a) more beautiful b) beautiful
c) the beautiful d) most expensive

9. The cheetah is than a lion.
 a) fast b) faster c) fastest d) most fast
10. Penguins are than eagles at swimming.
 a) good b) better c) best d) more good

Week11: Based on on all units

Choose the correct answer:

1. A is a natural skill that someone has.
 a) dream b) talent c) tool d) story
2. A place where you go to see a doctor is a
 a) clinic b) stadium c) park d) shop
3. A is a person who helps the doctor and checks patients.
 a) teacher b) pilot c) farmer d) nurse
4. We pack our clothes in a when we travel.
 a) tent b) torch c) suitcase d) map
5. A is a light you carry in the dark.
 a) pilot b) torch c) match d) sun
6. When I was five, I ride a bike.
 a) can b) could c) am d) must
7. I solve this puzzle now; it's easy!
 a) can b) could c) couldn't d) must
8. You shout in the library.
 a) must b) mustn't c) can d) could
9. She take her medicine to get well.
 a) has to b) doesn't have to c) can't d) shouldn't
10. Is she wear sunglasses?
 a) go to b) going to c) goes to d) went to

Week 12: Based on all units

Choose the correct answer:

1. Solving is a game where you join pieces together.
a) stories b) puzzles c) hobbies d) bikes
2. To means to ride a bicycle.
a) skate b) park c) sing d) cycle
3. If your head hurts, you have a
a) cough b) fever c) headache d) sore throat
4. You go to the to get your medicine.
a) pharmacy b) bank c) library d) cinema
5. The teacher asked the students to make a classroom about the planets.
a) suitcase b) torch c) ticket d) poster
6. She sing very well when she was little.
a) can b) could c) is d) mustn't
7. My bike is than yours.
a) expensive b) more expensive
c) most expensive d) the most expensive
8. Students wear a uniform at school.
a) must b) mustn't c) don't have to d) shouldn't
9. I am pack my suitcase tonight.
a) go to b) going to c) goes to d) went to
10. Mercury is than Earth.
a) small b) the smallest c) smallest d) smaller



(6Ms)

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

- Hobbies are activities we do in our (free - busy - work) time.
- Hobbies are things bring us (sadness - worry - joy).
- Hobbies are important because they help us (angry - relax - study)

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box:

(4Ms)

serious - medicine - feeling - hurts

Doctor : How are you ① today?

Asser : Not good, my stomach ②

Doctor : You look weak, but it's not ③

Asser : So what should I do, doctor?

Doctor : Take this ④ and take care of yourself.

3 Choose the correct answer:

(4Ms)

- I saw a (lion - tiger - dolphin) show in the sea yesterday.
- My brother is going (to play - play - playing) football this weekend.
- My sister spent the night with the shiny (planet - moon - sun).
- They (can - could - will) play tennis when they were young.

4 Read and correct the underlined mistakes:

(8Ms)

1. Mariam have to study for the exams.

(.....)

2. Ahmed is youngest than Omar.

(.....)

3. Malak is studying English every day.

(.....)

General Tests

4. We can cooking very easily now.

(.....)

5. Read the following passage, then answer the questions: (10Ms)

We went to our uncle's farm yesterday. We saw many animal helpers. The cows were in the field. The farmer was milking a cow. Cows give us fresh milk every day for drinking and making cheese. We walked to another field where sheep were eating grass. Workers carefully cut the wool to make sweaters and blankets. A brave dog was there watching over the sheep. The dog's job is to guard the sheep.

A. Read and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. They went to their grandpa's farm.

(.....)

2. The dog's job is to guard the sheep.

(.....)

B. Choose the correct answer:

3. The farmer was (studying - playing - milking) a cow.

4. The sheep were eating (grass - apples - mangoes).

5. Workers carefully cut the wool to make (shoes - sweaters - bags).

6. Write a paragraph of (4) sentences using the following key words:

(8Ms)

"Your Young Sister's Day at the Clinic"

► examination room - fever - medicine

.....

.....

.....

.....

خاص بالأزهر الشريف

Marks: 40

Al-Azhar Test

2



(6Ms)

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

1. Yesterday, I was very (happy - sad - tired).
2. My (body - head - arm) hurt.
3. I had a high fever and a (headache - cough - sore throat).

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box:

(4Ms)

paintings - Talent - perform - going to

Salma : Next week, we'll have a "Hobby ① Show"

Malak : Are you ② join?

Salma : Yes, I'm going to show my ③

Malak : That's good! I will ④ by playing the piano.

3 Choose the correct answer:

(4Ms)

1. My city is very (calm - quiet - crowded) and noisy.
2. (Are - Is - were) they going to study Math this week?
3. (Guard - Police - Friendly) dogs help officers to catch criminals.
4. We (can - could - will) swim very well now.

4 Read and correct the underlined mistakes:

(8Ms)

1. You must shout in the hospital. (.....)
2. Youssef is the smarter boy in the group. (.....)
3. Sally is taking the dog for a walk every week. (.....)
4. He couldn't reading when she was 3. (.....)

5 Read the following passage, then answer the questions: (10Ms)

Yesterday, I had a dream. I was inside a big spaceship with round windows. The rocket made a loud noise as it went up into the sky. I saw the bright moon looked like a lamp, and the stars were like small lights in the sky. After that, a kind alien with big eyes smiled at me. He showed me his planet. The houses were like soft clouds, and the children played football with the glowing star-ball. They asked me to play together. It was an amazing dream.

A Read and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. Yesterday, the speaker was inside a spaceship in a real life. (.....)
2. The stars were like small lights in the sky. (.....)

B Choose the correct answer:

3. The bright moon looked like a (car - lamp - flower).
4. A kind (alien - teacher - pilot) with big eyes smiled at the speaker.
5. The houses were like soft (jackets - clouds - scarves).

6 Write a paragraph of (4) sentences using the following key words: (8Ms)

"Your Favorite Hobby"

► playing games - reading - crafts

.....

.....

.....

.....

خاص بالأزهر الشريف

Marks: 40

Al-Azhar Test

3



(6Ms)

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

- Next week. Mr. Maged and his family are going to travel to (Egypt - Italy - America).
- Mr. Maged wants to show his family the most (boring - gloomy - beautiful) places.
- Mr. Maged is a/an (Syrian - Egyptian - European).

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box:

(4Ms)

blind - jobs - careful - kind

Nada : Did you know that some animals have ① like us?

Ahmed: Really? What ② of jobs do they do?

Nada : Some guide dogs help ③ people to cross roads.

Ahmed : Yes, I always see them. They are very calm and ④

3 Choose the correct answer:

(4Ms)

- He used the first- (aid-kit - paper - pen) when he had a cut.
- Heba (draws - drew - is drawing) at the moment.
- We did a perfect project because of our (failure - weakness - teamwork).
- They always (eats - are eating - eat) healthy food.

4 Read and correct the underlined mistakes:

(8Ms)

1. She don't have to come. The meeting will be online. (.....)2. My garden is most beautiful than yours. (.....)3. He could draw when he was a child, but he can now. (.....)

General Tests

4. They are go to study science after school. (.....)

5. Read the following passage, then answer the questions: (10Ms)

Donations are very important. When we donate to hospitals, we can save someone's life. We can help hospitals to give the treatment to sick and poor people for free. Donations are not only with money, you can also donate with your time. If you have any free time, you can go to spend it with sick children. You can help those children to continue their study, or you can play with them. These donations help children get the care they need and give their families hope.

A. Read and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. Donations are very important. (.....)
2. Donations are only with money. (.....)

B. Choose the correct answer:

3. When we donate to hospitals, we can save someone's (money - life - house).
4. Donations help to give the sick people (treatment - hospitals - ideas) for free.
5. You can help those children to continue their (work - study - class).

6. Write a paragraph of (4) sentences using the following key words:

(8Ms)

"The First Egyptian Astronaut"

► on the moon - planets - galaxy

خاص بالأزهر الشريف

Marks: 40

Al-Azhar Test

4



1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

(6Ms)

1. Pigeons carry notes and (letters - packages - flowers) between different places.
2. Falcons help (engineers - doctors - farmers) by hunting small animals.
3. You can see a falcon (playing - flying - swimming) over a field.

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box:

(4Ms)

Jupiter - solar - smallest - planet

Shady : We went to the planetarium yesterday.

Ali : What did you learn about?

Shady : We learnt about the ① system.

Ali : Do you know what the biggest ② is?

Shady : Yes, it's ③

Ali : Exactly, but the ④ one is Mercury.

3 Choose the correct answer:

(4Ms)

1. My friend is very smart, he can (solve - draw - paint) puzzles easily.
2. It's the (more - most - many) exciting film, I've ever seen.
3. You should cover your mouth when you have a (cough - headache - pain).
4. (Couldn't - Can't - Can) you help me with this puzzle? It's very difficult.

4 Read and correct the underlined mistakes:

(8Ms)

1. You mustn't go to school early.
2. They are going joining the red team next week.

(.....)

(.....)

Term 2

General Tests

3. She can ride a bike when she was younger. (.....)
4. Rana is older girl in her family. (.....)

5 Read the following passage, then answer the questions: (10Ms)

Hobbies are very fun. The activities we do in our free time are very important for our body and mind. Hobbies are not schoolwork, but things that bring us happiness. Hobbies are useful because they help us relax, have fun, and stay healthy. For example: when people play board games or solve puzzles, they learn teamwork and they can solve problems. When they sing or play the piano. They practice how to be creative. When they go cycling or skating, they stay strong and active.

A Read and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. The activities are very important for our body and mind. (.....)
2. Hobbies are schoolwork. (.....)

B Choose the correct answer:

3. Hobbies are useful because they help us stay (healthy - poor - angry).
4. When people play the piano, they practice how to be (noisy - creative - famous).
5. When people go (talking - fighting - cycling), they stay strong and active.

6 Write a paragraph of (4) sentences using the following key words: (8Ms)

"A Trip to the Planetarium"

► screen - solar system - guide

.....

.....

.....

.....

General Test

5

Marks: 30

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الملحق.



(2Ms)

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. You can learn a lot about history at the space museum. (.....)
2. You can see the Moon and the Sun through a big screen. (.....)
3. Mars is called the Blue Planet. (.....)
4. Saturn is very famous for its rings. (.....)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (2Ms)

1. His family started a small selling crafts online.
a) sun b) planet c) business d) comet
2. You eat a lot of unhealthy food.
a) have to b) mustn't c) has to d) doesn't have
3. In the past, people read newspaper.
a) can b) will c) could d) has to
4. She love as her voice is very nice.
a) singing b) football c) drawing d) tennis

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (2Ms)

aid-kit - better - bruises - worse - plaster

My son was playing when he fell down. He had ① on his body. He went home. His mom had a first- ② She told him to take a shower then she could use the ③ on the painful parts. He went to his bed to have some rest and to get ④

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

(7Ms)

Hobbies always show how people grow. Many children can draw, paint, or write stories. When they were younger, they couldn't do these activities well. Some people can solve puzzles quickly today, but before they couldn't. In the past, people could spend more time outside running, skating, or fishing. Today, we can choose from many hobbies like playing video games, watching films, and reading books online that help us learn skills for life. Hobbies are not only fun, they make us smarter, stronger, and happier.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Some people can solve quickly today.

a) puzzles	b) clocks
c) doors	d) rooms
2. Hobbies always show how people

a) sleep	b) get
c) grow	d) play

B Answer the following question:

3. What can many children do?

▶

4. What could people do outside?

▶

5. How can hobbies make us feel?

▶

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

(4Ms)

1. We are going (sleep) late this night to watch a film.
2. He usually (run) in the morning.

6 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences: **(2Ms)**

1. his- He - emails - received - friends - from.



2. dolphins - to - help - relax - Do - people?



7 Punctuate the following: **(4Ms)**

1. why did you go to planetarium



2. asser has a headache and a sore throat



8 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below: **(7Ms)**

"Why Are Donations Important?"

► sick people - free - treatment

.....

.....

.....

.....

Marks: 30

General Test

6

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الملحق.

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:



(2Ms)

1. Yesterday, I went to my school. (.....)
2. The nurse took me to the examination room. (.....)
3. My stomach was hurting me. (.....)
4. The doctor gave me some books. (.....)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (2Ms)

1. We learned about some animals like camels.
a) lake b) moon c) desert d) draft
2. She is to do the project this afternoon.
a) go b) going c) goes d) went
3. The nurse put a around his leg yesterday.
a) food b) sweater c) bag d) bandage
4. Mazen play the piano when he was 8.
a) could b) can c) will d) was

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (2Ms)

Luxor - Pyramids - adventure - look - take

Tomorrow, we are going to travel to Egypt. First, we're going to start our
 ① in Cairo. We're going to visit the Great ②
 of Giza and the Sphinx. We can't wait to ride camels, horses and
 ③ a lot of photos. Then, we're going to travel to ④
 People often call it "The world's greatest open -air museum."

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

(7Ms)

Every early morning, the farmer wakes up actively. His first task is to check on his animals, then moves to the water buffaloes to make sure that they have food and water. Water buffaloes help him by pulling ploughs through the fields. After breakfast, he goes to the field with his water buffalo. This is where he spends most of his day. He walks between the crops carefully to check the leaves and protect them from pests. He is happy to see his plants growing strong.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or ,d:

- The farmer's first task is to check on his
 a) plants b) animals c) birds d) tables
- He goes to the fields with his
 a) water buffalo b) gecko c) falcon d) donkey

B Answer the following question:

- How does the farmer wake up?

▶

- How do water buffaloes help him?

▶

- Why does he walk between the crops carefully?

▶

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

(4Ms)

- She (have to) go to work every day.
- Karim (don't) practice his French a lot.

General Tests

6 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences: (2Ms)

1. is - Milky - galaxy - What - the - Way?

► ?

2. We - around - the - sat - campfire - warm.

►

7 Punctuate the following: (4Ms)

1. do you eat cheese for breakfast

►

2. he takes care of his health

►

8 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below: (7Ms)

"Safety in Your School"

► first-aid-kit - nurse - clean

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Marks: 30

General Test

7

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الملحق.



(2Ms)

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. They're going to travel to Egypt next month. (.....)
2. They moved abroad three years ago. (.....)
3. They want to see the beautiful places in Cairo and Luxor. (.....)
4. They're going to pack their suitcases with light clothes. (.....)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(2Ms)

1. My sister always goes in winter when it starts to snow.
a) reading b) skating c) shouting d) clapping
2. She solve puzzles now, but she couldn't when she was younger.
a) can't b) can c) could d) couldn't
3. His handwriting was so, so the teacher couldn't read it well.
a) neat b) organized c) tidy d) messy
4. If someone gets injured, you tell the teacher.
a) mustn't b) must c) won't d) doesn't

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (2Ms)

suitcases - crowded - camping - look - tickets

Next trip, our class is going to travel to the beautiful Wadi El Gemal Park. It will be my first ① trip. We are going to pack our ② with warm clothes, a torch, and a water bottle. Our teacher made sure that everyone received the bus ③ She said the campsite might be ④

4 Read the text and answer the questions: (7Ms)

At our school, student's safety is very important. There are small first aid kits in the nurse's room. If someone gets a small cut, the nurse can use a plaster from the kit. Students must tell the teacher immediately if they get hurt to let them go to the nurse's room. But students mustn't try to use the kit alone because it might have dangerous things. Everyone must try to be safe. We can all have fun and stay healthy at school.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. At our, student's safety is very important.
a) school b) hospital c) home d) factory
2. We can all have fun and stay at school.
a) far b) quiet c) healthy d) poor

B Answer the following question:

3. What can the nurse do if someone gets a small cut?

▶

4. Why mustn't student use the kit alone?

▶

5. Why must student tell the teacher if they get hurt?

▶

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (4Ms)

1. (be) Omar going to travel abroad?

2. My sister always (call) me.

6 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences: (2Ms)

1. love - and - a lot - I - skating - cycling.



2. play - piano - Can - now - you - the?



7 Punctuate the following: (4Ms)

1. is he playing football this afternoon



2. they are very calm and careful



8 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below: (7Ms)

"Working As One Team"

► **classmates - together - learn**

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الملحق.

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:



(2Ms)

1. Many animals work hard to help people. (.....)
2. Donkeys carry small loads. (.....)
3. Donkeys transport rocks. (.....)
4. Donkeys don't know their routes. (.....)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(2Ms)

1. I saw a very small walking in the garden yesterday.
a) book b) sea c) creature d) chair
2. keep people safe in their countries.
a) Criminals b) Officers c) Thieves d) Killers
3. I a book now.
a) is reading b) reads c) read d) am reading
4. You must your uniform at school.
a) wearing b) wears c) wore d) wear

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (2Ms)

receptionist - treatment - examination room - take - donate

The hospital in our town is very important. It gives sick people

- ① for free. Families do not have to pay because many people
 ② money to it. When people arrive, a friendly ③
 helps them check- in. Then a nurse takes them to the ④ for
 tests. After that, the doctor writes the medicine to patients.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: (7Ms)

Last week, a group of students decided to start a Hobby Club. They arranged everything. Each student could share a special talent. In the art room, Salma showed her beautiful paintings. Her friendship with Maya grew stronger as they painted side by side. In the playground, Tamer showed basketball skills, and his excitement made others want to join. In the library, Laila organized a reading corner. Her love for reading made her classmates want to read more. Finally, Karim started a small garden to teach about caring for plants.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or ,d:

- Each student could share a special
 a) homework b) talent c) bridge d) planet
- Tamer showed skills.
 a) football b) tennis c) basketball d) volleyball

B Answer the following question:

- What did the group of students decide to do?
 ►
- How did Salma's and Maya's friendship grow stronger?
 ►
- What did Laila do in the library?
 ►

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (4Ms)

- My ring is (expensive) than hers.
- Are they (go) read the newspaper.

General Tests

6 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences: (2Ms)

1. your - older - you - Is - than - sister?

► ?

2. took - photos - trip - I - a lot - last - of.

►

7 Punctuate the following: (4Ms)

1. how did you feel after school

►

2. malak must follow the rules here

►

8 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below: (7Ms)

"Your Camping Trip"

► **campsite - campfire - hike**

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Marks: 30

General Test

9

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الملحق.



(2Ms)

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. We are going to have a trip. (.....)
2. Maya is going to join first to share her drawings. (.....)
3. Adam decides to play a piano song. (.....)
4. Nour's hobby is dancing. (.....)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(2Ms)

1. Her baby has a high and he is very warm.
a) mark b) level c) grade d) fever
2. The Sun is star in our solar system.
a) bright b) brighter c) the brightest d) more bright
3. When I was five, I swim, but now I can.
a) can b) could c) can't d) couldn't
4. The teacher's handwriting is, It's very clear.
a) readable b) touchable c) terrible d) breakable

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (2Ms)

shiny - smile - alien - star - planet

It was night time in our garden. A small, friendly ① sat on the swing. It looked at us with its big, ② eyes. Its skin was soft and silver. In its hand, it held a glowing object shaped just like a ③ The creature wasn't scary. It looked at us and gave a gentle ④

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

(7Ms)

The sun was warm yesterday and It was the first day of our break. My family decided to visit the park. The grass was soft, and there was gentle wind. The park was quiet, and we are relaxed there. I spent hours reading a book under a tree while my brother flew his colorful kite. We shared a simple picnic of fruit and cookies on a blanket. In the evening, the clouds were gold, we returned back home. We felt happy. It was a wonderful, peaceful day.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or ,d:

1. It was the first day of our
a) job b) help c) break d) donation
2. The was soft there.
a) grass b) beach c) swing d) slide

B Answer the following question:

3. How was the weather yesterday?

▶

4. What did the speaker do in the park?

▶

5. When did they return back home?

▶

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

(4Ms)

1. You (must) stay up late when you have a test.
2. Right now, the falcon (hunt) in the field.

6 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences: (2Ms)

1. to - She - scientist - a - wants - be.

▶

2. classmates - did - project - amazing - We - an - our - with.

▶

7 Punctuate the following: (4Ms)

1. what is your problem in English

▶

2. my brother was sick last week

▶

8 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below: (7Ms)

"What Is the Farmer's Daily Work?"

▶ milk - feed - watch over

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الملحق.

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:



(2Ms)

1. In many schools, you can often see large water buffaloes. (.....)
2. Some birds stand on their backs to eat the insects. (.....)
3. The farmer doesn't need to use chemicals anymore. (.....)
4. The food that grows is healthier and safer. (.....)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(2Ms)

1. My dad likes playing games like chess.
a) bored b) board c) soft d) large
2. Every day, our donkey heavy loads from the farm.
a) carry b) carried c) carries d) carrying
3. We always go to Alexandria to enjoy the amazing
a) beaches b) forms c) rugs d) walls
4. I come to school yesterday because I was sick.
a) can b) can't c) could d) couldn't

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (2Ms)

campfire - fun - campsite - boring - crowded

Our first family holiday is finally here! Tomorrow we will go to a
 ① by the lake. My mother is packing the picnic basket right
 now. My father says the lake is not ②, it's very calm. I'm going
 to sit around the ③ to read and get relaxed. I am excited to
 have ④ there.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

(7Ms)

Yesterday, I felt very unwell. I went to the clinic and sat in the waiting room. A nurse called my name and took me to the examination room. The kind doctor asked me how I was feeling. I explained that I had a bad headache and felt very hot. He checked me and listened to my breath. The doctor said I had a virus and needed to rest and drink plenty of water. He gave me a note for some medicine. I went to the pharmacy to buy them.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Yesterday, I felt very
a) well b) great c) nice d) unwell
2. I went to the clinic and sat in the room.
a) waiting b) bed c) living d) dining

B Answer the following question:

3. Where did the nurse take the speaker?

►

4. How did the speaker explain his feeling to the doctor?

►

5. What did the doctor give him?

►

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

(4Ms)

1. He is good today, so he (not have to) go to the doctor.
2. The ship is (large) than the boat.

General Tests

6 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences: (2Ms)

1. love - cycling - I - skating - in - the - park - and.



2. share - to - Who - wants - hobbies - their ?



7 Punctuate the following: (4Ms)

1. is she going to the campsite



2. akram always plays tennis every weekend



8 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below: (7Ms)

"Hobbies Are Useful"

► draw - sing - craft with paper

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Marks: 30

General Test

11

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الملحق.

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:



(2Ms)

1. Sara is the first Egyptian astronaut. (.....)
2. She went to space in 2005. (.....)
3. She saw the amazing planets in our solar system. (.....)
4. People in Egypt listened to her on radio. (.....)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(2Ms)

1. We set up our near the lake.
a) temple b) ancient c) tent d) hike
2. They are pack their suitcases tomorrow.
a) going to b) go c) going d) goes
3. is the largest planet in the solar system.
a) Galaxy b) Moon c) Star d) Jupiter
4. This math problem is than the last one.
a) most difficult b) more difficult c) difficult d) as difficult

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (2Ms)

incredible - take - landmark - email - worse

We sailed all morning and finally saw the famous lighthouse. It's a
 ① there. The view was ② ! I quickly used
 my camera to ③ some photos. Right away, I sent an
 ④ to my friend online with my favorite photo. We spent hours
 walking along the shore and looking at the blue waves.

General Tests

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

(7Ms)

Hobbies are the activities we love to do in our free time. They are not our jobs or schoolwork. They help us to relax, have fun and to be active. They make us learn patience and solve some problems. For example: building models teaches us to be careful. Solving puzzles makes us smarter. Playing music brings joy to our life. These special activities are a wonderful break from our daily routines. They refresh our minds, bring us happiness, and help us make new friends who share our interests.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or ,d:

- Hobbies are the we love to do in our free time.
a) work b) homework c) activities d) duties
- Building models teaches us to be
a) careful b) careless c) nervous d) angry

B Answer the following question:

3. How can hobbies help us?

▶

4. What does solving puzzles make us?

▶

5. What is the importance of playing music?

▶

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

(4Ms)

- Listen! She (sing) now.
- I couldn't (solving) puzzles when I was young.

6 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences: (2Ms)

1. planet - Which - described - is - the - as - smallest?

▶ ?

2. uncle - a - Does - have - farm - big - your?

▶ ?

7 Punctuate the following: (4Ms)

1. do you have to go shopping

▶

2. basel joined the talent show yesterday

▶

8 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below: (7Ms)

"Your Sick-Leave"

▶ email - fever - cough

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الملحق.

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:



(2Ms)

1. We mustn't care about our animals. (.....)
2. We should always be patient with animals. (.....)
3. We don't have to respect these animals. (.....)
4. The dog guards the sheep. (.....)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(2Ms)

1. I usually go around town every weekend.
a) sleeping b) swimming c) cycling d) crying
2. Police dogs help officers to catch
a) animals b) criminals c) helpers d) farmers
3. I my homework, I'm watching TV right now.
a) is doing b) am doing c) isn't doing d) am not doing
4. It's a school party, so you to wear the uniform.
a) don't have b) doesn't have c) must d) mustn't

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (2Ms)

collect - milking - sweater - cotton - wool

The farmer is in the field watching over the sheep. The sheep give us ① My grandmother used that wool to make a warm ② to me for winter. Near the chicken, we ③ fresh eggs every morning for breakfast. Also, we go to the cow for ④ it. Our farm animals are kind helpers.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

(7Ms)

We love crafting with paper to make colorful decorations. It is a fun and creative activity. My sister enjoys playing the piano because it helps her relax after a long day. The music makes her feel calm. Yesterday, we went to the gallery to see some new paintings. We rode the metro to get there. It was so crowded that there were no empty seats left. It was a very tiring ride. When we arrived, we forgot about the difficult ride. The artwork there was very beautiful.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- We love with paper to make colorful decorations.
a) playing b) reading c) writing d) crafting
- The artwork there was very
a) bad b) beautiful c) awful d) ugly

B Answer the following question:

- Why does the sister enjoy playing the piano?

▶

- How did they go to the gallery?

▶

- Why did they go to the gallery?

▶

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (4Ms)

- We (be) going to see the ancient temples this month.
- My friend (can't) draw very well, so he was sad.

General Tests

6 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences: (2Ms)

1. lessons - did - learn - moral - you?

▶ ?

2. am - documentary - watching - a - wildlife - about.

▶

7 Punctuate the following: (4Ms)

1. my favorite hobby is solving puzzles

▶

2. they mustn't shout at the class

▶

8 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below: (7Ms)

"Describe Your Favorite Animal Helper"

- ▶ What kind of it?
- ▶ What does it help you for?
- ▶ How can you treat it?

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Part 4

Listening Scripts



Test 1 on Unit 1

Next week, the class will have a Hobby Talent Show. Adam is going to perform by playing the piano and singing. Maya says she can show her drawing and painting; she can also do some crafting with paper. Hobbies are important because they help us relax, have fun, and stay healthy. When children play board games or solve puzzles, they learn teamwork and problem-solving.



Test 2 on Unit 2

"Yesterday, Adam did not feel well. He had a very bad stomachache and a high fever. His mother took him to the clinic. The doctor examined him carefully. The doctor gave Adam some medicine to feel better soon. He told Adam that he must stay at home and rest for two days."



Test 3 on Unit 3

Next month, Karim and his family are going to travel to their home country, Egypt! He is an Egyptian, but he moved abroad three years ago. He wants to show his family the most beautiful places on their holiday. They are going to pack their suitcases with light clothes because of the hot weather in Egypt.



Test 4 on Unit 4

Some animals work like people. Police dogs use their strong sense of smell to find lost people and catch criminals. Guide dogs help blind people walk safely. Horses help people feel calm and happy. Rescue dolphins save people in danger in

the sea. These animals show that helping others is a very special job.



Test 5 on Unit 5

"Sara Sabry is the first Egyptian female astronaut. She is also an engineer. She traveled into space in 2022. She says young people should follow their dreams. Nothing is impossible. She studied planets like Mars and Jupiter. She knew that Uranus is closer to the Sun than Neptune. The Milky Way is our galaxy."



General Test 1

(خاص بالأزهر الشريف)

Hobbies are the activities we love to do in our free time. They are not schoolwork, but things that bring us joy. Hobbies are important because they help us relax, have fun, and stay healthy. For example: when people play board games or solve puzzles, they learn teamwork and problem-solving.



General Test 2

(خاص بالأزهر الشريف)

Yesterday, I was very tired. My body hurt. I called my mom to come and check me. She found that I had a high fever and a cough. She said that I had to go to the doctor.



General Test 3

(خاص بالأزهر الشريف)

Next week, Mr. Maged and his family are going to travel to their home country, Egypt! He is an Egyptian, but he moved abroad many years ago. Now, he wants to show his family the most beautiful places on their holiday. They were packing their suitcases with light clothes because of the hot weather in Egypt.

Listening Scripts

General Test 4

(خاص بالأزهر الشريف)

Pigeons have an important job. They carry notes and letters between different places. Falcons help farmers by hunting small animals that damage crops. You can see a falcon flying over a field, looking for rats to catch. These birds fly high in the sky.

General Test 5

At the space museum, you can learn a lot about our universe. There is a big screen; you can see the Moon and the Sun through it. You can know that Mars is called the Red Planet because its iron-rich soil makes it look red. And Saturn is very famous for its rings. Our galaxy has many shiny stars.

General Test 6

Yesterday, I went to the clinic to make my check-up. The nurse took me to the examination room. The doctor asked for a blood test then he checked me. My stomach was hurting me. The doctor said that I was a little weak, but it wasn't serious. So I must rest and drink warm liquids. He gave me some medicine.

General Test 7

Tomorrow, my family and I are going to travel to Egypt. We are Egyptians, but we moved abroad four years ago. Now, we want to see the beautiful places in Cairo and Luxor. We're going to pack our suitcases with light clothes because of the hot weather in Egypt. We're going to visit Pyramids of Giza and temples in Luxor.

General Test 8

Many animals work hard to help people in their daily lives. On farms, strong water buffaloes pull ploughs through the fields. Donkeys carry heavy loads through villages and markets. They

transport crops and supplies through narrow streets. A donkey can walk to the market with baskets full of ripe fruit and vegetables. Donkeys know their routes very well.

General Test 9

We are going to have a "Hobby Talent Show." Maya is going to join first to share her drawings, paintings, and crafts. She also likes cycling and skating. Adam decides to play a piano song. He also enjoys puzzles and board games. Nour's hobby is writing stories. Maya says that coloring is another fun activity they all like.

General Test 10

On many farms, you can often see large water buffaloes and some birds stand on their backs. They are watching for flies. They eat insects that bother buffaloes. Those animals help each other and help the farmer too. The farmer doesn't need to use chemicals any more. The food will also be healthier and safer for everyone to eat.

General Test 11

Sara is the first Egyptian astronaut. She went to space in 2022. Sara wanted to inspire people in Egypt to follow their dreams and believe that nothing is impossible. She saw the amazing planets in our solar system. She said that our galaxy is called the "Milky Way" and it has many stars. People in Egypt saw her on TV.

General Test 12

We must care about our animals and give them a plenty of clean water, healthy food, and good shelters. We should always be patient with them. We have to respect these animals and thank them for their help. Like the cow that gives milk or the dog that guards the sheep. With this way, we can make a healthy farm.

Answers Key



Scan and check the "Student Book" model answers file here.

امسح الكود للاطلاع على ملف إجابات كتاب الطالب النموذجية.

Part 1

Revision on Unit 1

1. 1- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(Vocabulary)

- | | | |
|-----------------|------------------|------------------|
| 1. b) hobbies | 2. c) teamwork | 3. a) patience |
| 4. c) energetic | 5. b) craft | 6. a) excitement |
| 7. b) puzzles | 8. a) friendship | 9. d) perform |
| 10. b) journal | 11. d) skating | 12. a) skills |
| 13. d) cycling | 14. a) agreement | 15. a) interests |

2- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(Grammar)

- | | | |
|-------------|-----------------|----------------|
| 1. b) can | 2. d) couldn't | 3. a) could |
| 4. b) Could | 5. a) can't | 6. c) couldn't |
| 7. d) could | 8. b) can | 9. a) couldn't |
| 10. a) Can | 11. b) couldn't | 12. a) can |

3- Read and complete the text with the words....:

(1) First | (2) puzzles | (3) collect | (4) friendship

4- Read and complete the text with the words....:

(1) crafting | (2) patience | (3) Next | (4) skills

5- Read the text and answer the questions:

A- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. b) relax | 2. a) strong

B- Answer the following questions:

- We learn teamwork and how to solve problems.
- Fishing or running outside.
- Hobbies are fun activities for our free time. They help us stay strong, healthy, and smart.

6- Read and write the correct form of the word....:

- | | | |
|---------|-------------|----------|
| 1. can | 2. couldn't | 3. Could |
| 4. can | 5. couldn't | 6. can |
| 7. draw | 8. help | |

7- Put the words in the correct order:

- Hobbies bring joy and fun to us.
- We learn teamwork when we play board games.

3. A good hobby helps us relax.

4. We will have a talent show.

5. Students decided to start a hobby club.

6. Can you play the piano right now?

7. He couldn't finish the difficult puzzle.

8. Students can learn many life skills.

9. They cannot skate in the park today.

10. Could you help your mother yesterday?

8- Punctuate the following:

- Maya can play the piano now.
- Could Nour solve the puzzle yesterday?
- Adam is going to paint next week.
- They can't skate in the park today.
- Did Sarah start her new hobby?
- I could read when I was six.
- Can Kareem plant the small seeds.
- We learn teamwork from board games.
- Was the hobby club crowded yesterday?
- Laila organized a new reading corner.

9. Write a paragraph of (40) words.....:

My favorite hobby is playing board games with my friends and family. We love this activity because we learn teamwork while playing together. It is also great for solving difficult puzzles and problems. This hobby makes us very happy and smart.

Test on Unit 1

1- Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. F 2. T 3. T 4. F

2- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. b 2. c 3. a 4. c

3- Read and complete the text with:

- 1) First | (2) collect | (3) skills | (4) joy

Answers Key

4. Read the text and answer the questions:

A- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:
1. c) reading 2. b) leadership

B- Answer the following questions:

3. Omar taught basketball skills.
4. To teach others how to care for plants.
5. Sara and Maya.

5- Read and write the correct form of the word(s):

1. can 2. couldn't

6- Put the words in the correct order:

1. We learn teamwork from board games.
2. I could write stories when I was younger.

7- Punctuate the following:

1. Can Amr craft with paper today ?
2. Nour and Adam enjoy playing the piano .

8- Write a paragraph of (40) words.....:

Hobbies are very important in our life. Board games help me learn teamwork and problem-solving. Cycling helps me stay strong and energetic. I enjoy drawing and painting in my free time. I can draw beautiful pictures of nature. Hobbies help me stay healthy, happy, and relaxed.

Revision on Unit 2

1- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (Vocabulary)

- | | |
|-----------------|-----------------|
| 1. c) clinic | 2. a) fever |
| 3. d) beach | 4. c) medicine |
| 5. b) bandage | 6. c) accident |
| 7. a) aid-kit | 8. d) Donations |
| 9. b) treatment | 10. c) polite |

2- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (Grammar)

- | | |
|---------------------|------------------------|
| 1. c) must | 2. a) mustn't |
| 3. d) must | 4. b) have to |
| 5. c) don't have to | 6. d) doesn't have to |
| 7. c) mustn't | 8. c) don't have to |
| 9. a) mustn't | 10. d) doesn't have to |

3- Read and complete the text with the words....:

- | | |
|----------------|-------------|
| 1- stomachache | 2- clinic |
| 3- examination | 4- medicine |

4- Read and complete the text with the words....:

- | | |
|-------------|-----------|
| 1- sick | 2- donate |
| 3- friendly | 4- clean |

5- Read the text and answer the questions:

A- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1- (c) injured 2- (d) careful

B- Answer the following questions:

- 3- The first aid kit has bandages, plasters, and scissors.

- 4- The teachers put the kit in a clean, high place in the classroom.

- 5- The teachers will let them go to the nurse's room.

6- Read and write the correct form of the word(s)....:

- | | |
|--------------------|------------|
| 1- must | 2- has to |
| 3- don't have to | 4- have to |
| 5- don't have to | 6- mustn't |
| 7- doesn't have to | 8- study |
| 9- touch | 10- to get |

7- Put the words in the correct order:

1. She has a cough and a headache.
2. No fast food for three weeks.
3. They have a first aid kit in their school.
4. You have to go to the clinic.
5. He mustn't shout in the classroom.
6. Some hospitals give the treatment for free.
7. Where must you park your car?
8. I have to go to the clinic.
9. What does she have to do?
10. You must do exercise to be fit.

8- Punctuate the following:

1. Where is the nearest bus stop ?
2. Mariam went to London last summer .
3. Can Salma help her mother now ?
4. Did you feed the cat yesterday ?
5. What time does the film start ?
6. Hady visited his uncle last week .
7. I need to buy milk and bread .
8. My friend's birthday is in May .
9. The hospital is clean and safe .
10. Can I go to the clinic ?

9- Write a paragraph of (40) words:

My trip to Egypt was unforgettable. I visited the pyramids, sailed on the Nile, and explored busy markets. The people were kind, the food was delicious, and the history everywhere made me proud and excited during my wonderful school holiday.

Test on Unit 2

1- Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

- | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|
| 1- F | 2- F | 3- T | 4- T |
|------|------|------|------|

2- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- | | |
|----------------|--------------|
| 1- b) pharmacy | 2- a) donate |
| 3- d) mustn't | 4- c) have |

3- Read and complete the text with the words...:

- 1- headache 2- clinic
3- friendly 4- treatment

4- Read the text and answer the questions:

A- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1- (b) soap
2- (a) bad

B- Answer the following questions:

- 3- They should go to the school clinic.
4- To stay safe.
5- It makes the school a happy place.

5- Read and write the correct form of the word(s)...

- 1- mustn't 2- have to

6- Put the words in the correct order

- 1- She has a headache and a cough.
2- Visitors mustn't feed the animals in the zoo.

7- Punctuate the following:

- 1- Where is the nearest hospital?
2- Ali went to Cairo last Monday.

8- Write a paragraph of (40) words

Healthy habits are very important for a strong body and mind. I exercise every day, eat healthy food like fruits and vegetables. I get enough sleep at night. These habits help me stay active, happy, and ready for school.

Revision on Unit 3

1- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(Vocabulary)

- 1- (a) suitcases 2- (b) crowded
3- (d) beach 4- (d) Pyramids
5- (a) special 6- (d) cruise
7- (b) temples 8- (c) city
9- (d) invitation 10- (d) a landmark

2- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(Grammar)

- 1- (c) is going 2- (a) study
3- (c) going to 4- (d) am not
5- (b) Are/ going 6- (a) to travel
7- (c) are you going 8- (a) going to
9- (b) is 10- (d) meet

3- Read and complete the text with the words...:

- 1- pack 2- crowded 3- sandcastle 4- fun

4- Read and complete the text with the words...:

- 1- Egyptians 2- Sphinx 3- Nile 4- beaches

5- Read the text and answer the questions:

A- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1- (b) campsite 2- (a) warm

B- Answer the following questions:

3- To Wadi El Gemal Park.

4- Because another school is going to visit.

5- About desert plants and animals.

6- Read and write the correct form of ...:

- 1- to sleep 2- are not going
3- Is 4- to bake
5- going to 6- are
7- to swim 8- isn't going
9- Are 10- am

7- Put the words in the correct order

- 1- He received emails from his friends.
2- We are finally going to go on a trip.
3- My father packed all the suitcases yesterday.
4- Do you receive your bus tickets?
5- I am going to visit the grand museum.
6- This city is very crowded and noisy.
7- Where are you going to travel next month?
8- I took a lot of photos last trip.
9- She is going to invite Nada.
10- We sat around the warm campfire.

8- Punctuate the following:

- 1- Menna is travelling to Cairo tomorrow.
2- Zeina will go to the campsite.
3- Did she send all the emails?
4- Is he going to come today?
5- Nour went to the beach yesterday.
6- How did you travel to Aswan?
7- I enjoy the delicious Egyptian food.
8- Are you going to have a picnic?
9- Adam went to Hurgada last week.
10- Did you swim in the sea?

9- Write a paragraph of (40) words

Last Mont, I went to Egypt. It was a beautiful county. It has many ancient places. I visited the Great Pyramids of Giza. We travelled to Luxor to visit some temples and learn more about kings' tombs. I really enjoyed the visit and I want to go again.

Test on Unit 3

1- Listen and write (T)True or (F) False:

- 1- F 2- T 3- F 4- T

2- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1- (a) travel 2- (c) to go
3- (b) outfit 4- (d) going to

3- Read and complete the text with the words...:

- 1- pack 2- crowded
3- built 4- fun

Answers Key

4- Read the text and answer the questions:

A- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1- (a) beautiful 2- (b) Nile cruise

B- Answer the following questions:

- 3- They are going to take a train.
4- The world's greatest open-air museum.
5- The amazing temples of Karnak and Luxor.

5- Read and write the correct form

- 1- is going 2- to write

6- Put the words in the correct order

- 1- Are you going to pack your suitcases?
2- Are we going to hike today?

7- Punctuate the following:

- 1- We have an English project today.
2- Do you have any future plans?

8- Write a paragraph of (40) words using ...:

Last Friday, we went on a school trip. It was at a campsite. The campsite was by a quiet lake. The teacher helped us to set up our tents. We sat around the campfire to be warm and have our lunch. It was much fun.

Revision on Unit 4

1- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(Vocabulary)

1. c) police dog 2. b) Guide dogs
3. a) danger 4. b) sweaters
5. d) guard dog 6. b) insects
7. c) water 8. b) feathers
9. c) peaceful 10. a) helpful
11. c) helpers

2- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(Grammar)

1. a) ploughs 2. b) is carrying
3. d) deliver 4. a) help
5. d) is crawling 6. a) use
7. b) is moving 8. a) doesn't eat
9. b) Is 10. c) teach
11. a) Do 12. b) isn't

3- Read and complete the text with the words....:

- 1- wool 2- guard dog 3- lay 4- insects

4- Read and complete the text with the words....:

- 1- insects 2- natural 3- fields 4- harmful

5- Read and complete the text with the words....:

- 1- dogs 2- danger
3- rescue 4- swimmers

6- Read and write the correct form

- 1- aren't watching 2- Are you studying
3- drives 4- is chasing
5- is crying 6- don't like

- 7- is explaining 8- are singing
9- Is he working 10- is knocking
11- rises 12 isn't working

7- Put the words in the correct order

1. Police dogs help officers catch criminals.
2. Guide dogs help blind people walk safely.
3. Chickens lay some eggs every morning.
4. Egrets eat harmful insects in the fields.
5. Dolphins help people in danger in the sea.
6. Horses help people to feel calm.
7. Egrets sometimes stand on water buffaloes.
8. What do people use wool for?

8- Punctuate the following:

1. Police dogs help officers catch criminals.
2. Do guide dogs help blind people?
3. Cows give us fresh milk every day.
4. Is the guard dog watching the sheep?
5. Chickens lay eggs in the morning.
6. Egrets eat harmful insects in fields.
7. Are horses and dogs calm animals?
8. Mr. Ali milks cows every day.
9. Sheep wool is thick and warm.
10. Do donkeys carry heavy loads?

Test on Unit 4

1- Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

- 1- F 2- T 3- T 4- F

2- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1- (d) containers 2- (a) Pigeons
3- (c) is standing 4- (d) work

3- Read and complete the text with the words....:

- 1- cheese 2- blankets
3- loads 4- workers

4- Read the text and answer the questions:

A- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1- (b) Egrets 2- (b) attacks suddenly

B- Answer the following questions:

- 3- Egrets eat insects that bother the cattle, and sometimes they stand on the cattle's backs to see better, while the cattle don't mind.
4- Farmers appreciate egrets because they help control harmful insects naturally, so fewer chemicals are needed and the food is healthier.
5- Egrets help farmers by eating harmful insects in the fields and by reducing the need for chemical pesticides.

5- Read and write the correct form of the word(s)....:

- 1- Do 2- are helping

6- Put the words in the correct order:

1. Some animals are working very hard.
2. Buffaloes help farmers by pulling ploughs.

7- Punctuate the following:

- 1- The dog is running around the sheep.
- 2- What do they do for plants?

8- Write a paragraph of (40) words

A day in the barn is very busy. The cows eat fresh grass in the morning. After that, the farmer milks them carefully. The barn is calm, and the cows are happy, giving us fresh milk every day.

Revision on Unit 5

1- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(Vocabulary)

1. b) Sun
2. c) Saturn
3. d) Earth
4. c) Mars
5. a) galaxy
6. b) Jupiter
7. c) Mercury
8. d) Milky Way
9. c) astronaut
10. a) teamwork
11. a) rocket
12. d) spaceship

2- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(Grammar)

1. a) taller
2. d) best
3. c) more expensive
4. b) biggest
5. a) more interesting
6. c) the most beautiful
7. d) happier
8. b) larger
9. a) smallest
10. b) more exciting

3- Read and complete the text with the words....:

- 1- galaxy
- 2- solar system
- 3- Sun
- 4- moon

4- Read and complete the text with the words....:

- 1- Mars
- 2- iron
- 3- red
- 4- Earth

5- Read and complete the text with the words....:

- 1- astronaut
- 2- space
- 3- dreams
- 4- solar system

6- Read the text and answer the questions:

A- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1- (b) planetarium
- 2- (a) has iron-rich soil

B- Answer the following questions:

- 3- The guide said that Jupiter is the largest planet.
- 4- The name of our galaxy is the Milky Way.
- 5- The children thought space was very exciting.

7- Read and write the correct form....:

- 1- larger
- 2- smallest
- 3- more interesting
- 4- tallest

5- most difficult

7- longest

9- older

6- fatter

8- colder

10- funniest

8- Put the words in the correct order:

1. The Sun is our brightest star.
2. Mars is called the Red Planet.
3. Saturn has beautiful shiny rings.
4. Our galaxy is the Milky Way.
5. Sara Sabry is an Egyptian astronaut.
6. Teamwork is very important in schools.
7. Nada worked with Adam on the poster.
8. How many planets are there in our solar system?
9. Jupiter is the largest planet in the solar system.
10. They made a poster for the science class.

9- Punctuate the following:

1. The Sun is a bright star.
2. Is Mars called the Red Planet?
3. Saturn has beautiful rings.
4. Sara Sabry is an astronaut.
5. Nada and Adam are classmates.
6. Did you visit the planetarium yesterday?

10- Write a paragraph of (40) words

The solar system is an amazing part of space. The Sun is at its center, and all the planets move around it. Our solar system is inside the Milky Way galaxy, which has billions of stars.

Test on Unit 5

1- Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

- 1- F
- 2- T
- 3- T
- 4- F

2- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1- (a) Mars
- 2- (b) alone
- 3- (d) than
- 4- (c) largest

3- Read and complete the text with the words....:

- 1- stars
- 2- sky
- 3- spins
- 4- Milky

4- Read the text and answer the questions:

A- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1- (b) learned to work together
- 2- (c) rings

B- Answer the following questions:

- 3- The teacher looked worried because the poster was not finished.
- 4- Adam wrote facts about Jupiter and Neptune on the poster.
- 5- They learned the importance of teamwork from this project.

Answers Key

5- Read and write the correct form of the word(s)....:

- 1- smaller 2- largest

6- Put the words in the correct order

1. Do you want to be an astronaut?
2. Our galaxy is called the Milky Way.

7- Punctuate the following:

- 1- Sara Sabry is an Egyptian astronaut.
- 2- Is Saturn your favorite planet?

8- Write a paragraph of (40) words using the words below:

My favorite planet is Saturn. It is part of our solar system and is famous for its shiny rings. I love looking at pictures of Saturn because its rings are beautiful and make it different from all the other planets.

Part 2

Weekly Evaluations

Week 1: Based on Unit 1

Choose the correct answer:

- | | | |
|----------------|---------------|----------------|
| 1- b) crafting | 2- a) cycling | 3- c) painting |
| 4- a) creative | 5- b) puzzles | 6- b) couldn't |
| 7- d) could | 8- a) can | 9- d) couldn't |
| 10- b) could | | |

Week 2: Based on Unit 1

Choose the correct answer:

- | | | |
|--------------|-------------|----------------|
| 1- c) talent | 2- b) free | 3- a) patience |
| 4- d) count | 5- b) join | 6- a) read |
| 7- b) could | 8- c) can't | 9- b) could |
| 10- d) draw | | |

Week 3: Based on Unit 2

Choose the correct answer:

- | | | |
|----------------|-----------------------|----------------|
| 1- b) fever | 2- d) advice | 3- d) pharmacy |
| 4- b) headache | 5- c) weak | 6- b) nurse |
| 7- a) must | 8- c) doesn't have to | |
| 9- b) mustn't | 10- c) must | |

Week 4: Based on Unit 2

Choose the correct answer:

- | | |
|---------------------|----------------------|
| 1- d) serious | 2- b) sore throat |
| 3- c) warm liquids | 4- d) clinic |
| 5- c) check-up | 6- d) must |
| 7- d) must | 8- d) has |
| 9- c) don't have to | 10- c) don't have to |

Week 5: Based on Unit 3

Choose the correct answer:

- | | | |
|----------------|------------------------|---------------|
| 1- c) suitcase | 2- b) packs | 3- c) crowded |
| 4- b) Pyramids | 5- c) temple | 6- c) buy |
| 7- c) am | 8- c) is going to snow | |
| 9- d) going | 10- c) don't have to | |

Week 6: Based on Unit 3

Choose the correct answer:

- | | | |
|--------------------|--------------------|---------------|
| 1- b) Pyramids | 2- c) temple | 3- d) special |
| 4- a) cruise | 5- c) sunglasses | |
| 6- b) hike | 7- a) am going to | |
| 8- b) is going to | 9- b) are going to | |
| 10- d) is going to | | |

Week 7: Based on Unit 4

Choose the correct answer:

- | | | |
|-----------------|---------------|----------------|
| 1- a) Police | 2- c) horse | 3- d) dolphins |
| 4- a) brave | 5- c) careful | 6- b) plays |
| 7- d) doing | 8- b) doesn't | |
| 9- b) am eating | 10- a) work | |

Week 8: Based on Unit 4

Choose the correct answer:

- | | |
|-----------------|------------------|
| 1- d) sheep | 2- a) guard dog |
| 3- a) sweater | 4- b) barn |
| 5- a) breakfast | 6- c) is writing |
| 7- a) Do | 8- b) studies |
| 9- a) are going | 10- a) am |

Week 9: Based on Unit 5

Choose the correct answer:

- | | | |
|-------------------|----------------|-------------|
| 1- b) moon | 2- d) sun | 3- c) solar |
| 4- d) galaxy | 5- a) Saturn | 6- b) Earth |
| 7- d) more useful | 8- b) the most | 9- d) best |
| 10- c) cleverest | | |

Week 10: Based on Unit 5

Choose the correct answer:

- | | |
|------------------|----------------------|
| 1- b) spaceships | 2- a) comet |
| 3- d) asteroids | 4- c) creature |
| 5- b) swing | 6- d) the most |
| 7- d) best | 8- a) more beautiful |
| 9- b) faster | 10- b) better |

Week 11: Based on all Units

Choose the correct answer:

- | | | |
|----------------|--------------|-------------|
| 1- b) talent | 2- a) clinic | 3- d) nurse |
| 4- c) suitcase | 5- b) torch | 6- b) could |

- 7- a) can 8- b) mustn't 9- a) has to
10- b) going to

Week 12: Based on all Units

Choose the correct answer:

- 1- b) puzzles 2- d) cycle 3- c) headache
4- a) pharmacy 5- d) poster 6- b) could
7- b) more expensive 8- a) must
9- b) going to 10- d) smaller

Part (3)

Al-Azhar Tests

Al-Azhar Test 1

1- Listen again and choose the correct answer:

- 1- free 2- joy 3- relax

2- Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box:

- 1- feeling 2- hurts 3- serious 4- medicine

3- Choose the correct answer:

- 1- dolphin 2- to play
3- moon 4- could

4- Read and correct the underlined mistakes:

- 1- has 2- younger
3- studies 4- cook

5- Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A- Read and write (T) True or (F) False:

- 1- F 2- T

B- Choose the correct answer:

- 3- milking 4- grass 5- sweaters

6- Write a paragraph of (4) sentences using the following key words:

Yesterday, my sister was sick. She went to the clinic. The nurse took her to the examination room. The doctor said that she had a fever and gave her some medicine.

Al-Azhar Test 2

1- Listen again and choose the correct answer:

- 1- tired 2- body 3- cough

2- Read and complete the dialogue

- 1- Talent 2- going to
3- paintings 4- perform

3- Choose the correct answer:

- 1- crowded 2- Are
3- Police 4- can

4- Read and correct the underlined mistakes:

- 1- mustn't 2- smartest
3- takes 4- read

5- Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A- Read and write (T) True or (F) False:

- 1- F 2- T

B- Choose the correct answer:

- 3- lamp 4- alien 5- clouds

6- Write a paragraph of (4) sentences using the following key words:

My favorite hobby is playing video games. I always play online with my friends. I also like to read funny stories. My sister and I can make crafts.

Al-Azhar Test 3

1- Listen again and choose the correct answer:

- 1- Egypt 2- beautiful 3- an Egyptian

2- Read and complete the dialogue with the words

- 1- jobs 2- kind 3- blind 4- careful

3- Choose the correct answer:

- 1- aid-kit 2- is drawing 3- teamwork 4- eat

4- Read and correct the underlined mistakes:

- 1- doesn't have 2- more
3- couldn't 4- are going

5- Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A- Read and write (T) True or (F) False:

- 1- T 2- F

B- Choose the correct answer:

- 3- life 4- treatment 5- study

6- Write a paragraph of (4) sentences using the following key words:

Last week, we met the first Egyptian astronaut. She told us everything about planets. Our galaxy is called the "Milky Way". She went to space and walked on the moon.

Al-Azhar Test 4

1- Listen again and choose the correct answer:

- 1- letters 2- farmers 3- flying

2- Read and complete the dialogue

- 1- solar 2- planet 3- Jupiter 4- smallest

3- Choose the correct answer:

- 1- solve 2- most 3- cough 4- Can

4- Read and correct the underlined mistakes:

- 1- must 2- to join
3- could 4- the oldest

Answers Key

5- Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A- Read and write (T) True or (F) False:

- 1- T 2- F

B- Choose the correct answer:

- 3- healthy 4- creative 5- cycling

6- Write a paragraph of (4) sentences

Next week, we're going to go on a trip to the planetarium. The guide is going to show us the planets on a big screen. Our solar system has the Sun and the eight planets. Jupiter is the largest planet, but Mercury is the smallest one. Our universe is amazing.

General Tests

General Test 5

1- Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

- 1- F 2- T 3- F 4- T

2- Choose the correct answer

- 1- (c) business 2- (b) mustn't
3- (c) could 4- (a) singing

3- Read and complete the text with the words.... 1-

- bruises 2- aid-kit
3- plaster 4- better

4- Read the text and answer the questions:

A- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1- (a) puzzles 2- (c) grow

B- Answer the following questions:

- 3- Many children can draw, paint, or write stories.
4- People could spend more time outside running, skating, or fishing.
5- They make us smarter, stronger, and happier.

5- Read and write the correct form of the word(s)....:

- 1- to sleep 2- runs

6- Put the words in the correct order:

- 1- He received emails from his friends.
2- Do dolphins help people to relax?

7- Punctuate the following:

- 1- Why did you go to planetarium?
2- Asser has a headache and a sore throat.

8- Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words

Donations are very important for poor and sick people. When you donate to a hospital, it can give the treatment for free. We can also donate with money, clothes, toys, or time. When you're free, you can spend time with sick children.

General Test 6

1- Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

- 1- F 2- T 3- T 4- F

2- Choose the correct answer

- 1- (c) desert 2- (b) going
3- (d) bandage 4- (a) could

3- Read and complete the text with the words.... 1-

- adventure 2- Pyramids
3- take 4- Luxor

4- Read the text and answer the questions:

A- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1- (b) animals 2- (a) water buffalo

B- Answer the following questions:

- 3- He wakes up actively.
4- Water buffaloes help him by pulling ploughs through the fields.
5- To check the leaves and protect them from pests.

5- Read and write the correct form of the word(s)....:

- 1- has to 2- doesn't

6- Put the words in the correct order:

- 1- What is the Milky Way galaxy?
2- We sat around the warm campfire.

7- Punctuate the following:

- 1- Do you eat cheese for breakfast?
2- He takes care of his health.

8- Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words

My school is safe. We have a big first-aid-kit in the nurse's room. If anyone hurts, we must tell the teacher or the nurse. We mustn't open the kit by ourselves because it may have something dangerous inside it. We should keep ourselves clean and safe.

General Test 7

1- Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

- 1- F 2- F 3- T 4- T

2- Choose the correct answer

- 1- (b) skating 2- (b) can
3- (d) messy 4- (b) must

3- Read and complete the text with the words.... 1-

- camping 2- suitcases
3- tickets 4- crowded

4- Read the text and answer the questions:

A- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1- (a) school 2- (c) healthy

B- Answer the following questions:

- 3- The nurse can use a plaster from the kit.
4- Because it might have dangerous things.
5- To let them go to the nurse's room.

5- Read and write the correct form of the word(s)....:

- 1- Is 2- calls

6- Put the words in the correct order:

- 1- I love skating and cycling a lot.
2- Can you play the piano now?

7 - Punctuate the following:

- 1- Is he playing football this afternoon?
- 2- They are very calm and careful.

8- Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

My classmates and I are very hardworking. We always work together as one team. When the teacher asks for any project, we help each other and share our ideas. With this way, we can learn faster and have more skills.

General Test 8

1- Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

- 1- T 2- F 3- F 4- F

2- Choose the correct answer

- 1- (c) creature 2- (b) Officers
- 3- (d) am reading 4- (d) wear

3- Read and complete the text with the words....:

- 1- treatment 2- donate
- 3- receptionist 4- examination room

4- Read the text and answer the questions:

A- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1- (b) talent 2- (c) basketball

B- Answer the following questions:

- 3- They decided to start a Hobby Club.
- 4- As they painted side by side.
- 5- She organized a reading corner.

5- Read and write the correct form of the word(s)....:

- 1- more expensive 2- going to

6- Put the words in the correct order:

- 1- Is your sister older than you?
- 2- I took a lot of photos last trip.

7 - Punctuate the following:

- 1- How did you feel after school?
- 2- Malak must follow the rules here.

8- Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

Our last school trip was amazing. We went to a campsite near mountains. We hiked through a trail full of trees. In the evening, we sat around a campfire to be warm and have some fun. We took a lot of photos and played games together.

General Test 9

1- Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

- 1- F 2- T 3- T 4- F

2- Choose the correct answer

- 1- (d) fever 2- (c) the brightest
- 3- (d) couldn't 4- (a) readable

3- Read and complete the text with the words....:

- 1- alien 2- shiny
- 3- star 4- smile

4- Read the text and answer the questions:

A- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1- (c) break 2- (a) grass

B- Answer the following questions:

- 3- The sun was warm and there was gentle wind.
- 4- He spent hours reading a book under a tree.
- 5- In the evening.

5- Read and write the correct form of the word(s)....:

- 1- mustn't 2- is hunting

6- Put the words in the correct order:

- 1- She wants to be a scientist.
- 2- We did an amazing project with our classmates.

7 - Punctuate the following:

- 1- What is your problem in English?
- 2- My brother was sick last week.

8- Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

The farmer works on his farm every day. He wakes up early to milk his cow and feed the animals. He puts grass to his sheep. The guard dog sits nearly to watch over the sheep and protect them from wolves.

General Test 10

1- Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

- 1- F 2- T 3- T 4- T

2- Choose the correct answer

- 1- (b) board 2- (c) carries
- 3- (a) beaches 4- (d) couldn't

3- Read and complete the text with the words....:

- 1- campsite 2- crowded
- 3- campfire 4- fun

4- Read the text and answer the questions:

A- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1- (d) unwell 2- (a) waiting

B- Answer the following questions:

- 3- To the examination room.
- 4- He had a bad headache and felt very hot.
- 5- A note for some medicine.

5- Read and write the correct form of the word(s)....:

- 1- doesn't have to 2- larger

6- Put the words in the correct order:

- 1- I love cycling and skating in the park.
- 2- Who wants to share their hobbies?

7 - Punctuate the following:

- 1- Is she going to the campsite?
- 2- Akram always plays tennis every weekend.

Answers Key

8- Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

Hobbies are very useful for us. They are not schoolwork. We always do our hobbies in our free time. We can sing songs. I enjoy drawing and I can also craft with paper. My sister enjoys swimming. She goes to the club every weekend.

General Test 11

1- Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

- 1- T 2- F 3- T 4- F

2- Choose the correct answer

- 1- (c) tent 2- (a) going to
3- (d) Jupiter 4- (b) more difficult

3- Read and complete the text with the words...: 1-

- landmark 2- incredible
3- take 4- email

4- Read the text and answer the questions:

A- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1- (c) activities 2- (a) careful

B- Answer the following questions:

- 3- They help us to relax, have fun and to be active.
4- Solving puzzles makes us smarter.
5- Playing music brings joy to our life.

5- Read and write the correct form of the word(s)...:

- 1- is singing 2- solve

6- Put the words in the correct order:

- 1- Which planet is described as the smallest?
2- Does your uncle have a big farm?

7- Punctuate the following:

- 1- Do you have to go to shopping?
2- Basel joined the talent show yesterday.

8- Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words

Yesterday, I was very sick. I had a bad fever and cough, so I couldn't go to work. I sent an email to my boss to take sick-leave. I told him to send me any emails if they need anything as I can work from home today.

General Test 12

1- Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

- 1- F 2- T 3- F 4- T

2- Choose the correct answer

- 1- (c) cycling 2- (b) criminals
3- (d) am not doing 4- (a) don't have

3- Read and complete the text with the words...:

- 1- wool 2- sweater
3- collect 4- milking

4- Read the text and answer the questions:

A- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1- (d) crafting 2- (b) beautiful

B- Answer the following questions:

- 3- Because it helps her relax after a long day.
4- They rode the metro.
5- To see some new paintings.

5- Read and write the correct form of the word(s)...:

- 1- are 2- couldn't

6- Put the words in the correct order:

- 1- What moral lessons did you learn?
2- I am watching a documentary about wildlife.

7- Punctuate the following:

- 1- My favorite hobby is solving puzzles.
2- They mustn't shout at the class.

8- Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

My favorite animal helper is a guard dog. The guard dog helps on the farm to watch over the sheep. It's very brave and smart. It's always near to protect the sheep from wolves. I'm always kind and patient with it.